

# MODULAR CURVES AND RAMANUJAN'S CONTINUED FRACTION

BRYDEN CAIS AND BRIAN CONRAD

ABSTRACT. We use arithmetic models of modular curves to establish some properties of Ramanujan's continued fraction. In particular, we give a new geometric proof that its singular values are algebraic units that generate specific abelian extensions of imaginary quadratic fields, and we use a mixture of geometric and analytic methods to construct and study an infinite family of two-variable polynomials over  $\mathbf{Z}$  that are related to Ramanujan's function in the same way that the classical modular polynomials are related to the classical  $j$ -function. We also prove that a singular value on the imaginary axis, necessarily real, lies in a radical tower in  $\mathbf{R}$  only if all odd prime factors of its degree over  $\mathbf{Q}$  are Fermat primes; by computing some ray class groups, we give examples where this necessary condition is not satisfied.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Let  $\mathbf{C}$  be an algebraic closure of  $\mathbf{R}$ . For  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , let  $q_\tau = e^{2\pi i_\tau \tau}$  with  $i_\tau^2 = -1$  and  $i_\tau$  in the connected component of  $\tau$  in  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , so  $|q_\tau| < 1$  and  $q_\tau = q_{-\tau}$ .

The *Ramanujan continued fraction*  $F : \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  is

$$F(\tau) := \frac{q_\tau^{1/5}}{1+} \frac{q_\tau}{1+} \frac{q_\tau^2}{1+} \frac{q_\tau^3}{1+} \cdots$$

where  $q_\tau^r$  means  $e^{2\pi i_\tau r \tau}$  for  $r \in \mathbf{Q}$ . Note that  $F(\tau) = F(-\tau)$ . In his 1916 letter to Hardy, Ramanujan stated the remarkable identities

$$(1.1) \quad F(i) = \frac{e^{-2\pi/5}}{1+} \frac{e^{-2\pi}}{1+} \frac{e^{-4\pi}}{1+} \frac{e^{-6\pi}}{1+} \frac{e^{-8\pi}}{1+} \cdots = \sqrt{\frac{5 + \sqrt{5}}{2}} - \frac{\sqrt{5} + 1}{2}$$

and

$$(1.2) \quad F\left(\frac{5}{2} + i\right) = \frac{-e^{-\pi/5}}{1+} \frac{-e^{-\pi}}{1+} \frac{e^{-2\pi}}{1+} \frac{-e^{-3\pi}}{1+} \cdots = -\sqrt{\frac{5 - \sqrt{5}}{2}} + \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{2}$$

for any  $i \in \mathbf{C}$  satisfying  $i^2 + 1 = 0$ , and he asserted that if  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  satisfies  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$ , then “ $F(\tau)$  can be exactly found.”

Watson [21] proved (1.1) and (1.2) as consequences of the identity

$$(1.3) \quad \frac{1}{F(\tau)} - 1 - F(\tau) = \frac{\eta(\tau/5)}{\eta(5\tau)},$$

---

*Date:* April 21, 2004.

1991 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary 11F03; Secondary 14G35.

*Key words and phrases.*  $q$ -series, modular curve, Ramanujan continued fraction.

The second author was supported by the NSF and the Sloan Foundation. The authors thank K. Conrad for providing us with a proof of Lemma D.1 and thank William Stein for his publically available computer cluster MECCA that was used for the numerical computations. We are also greatly indebted to James Parson for many enlightening and insightful discussions concerning Appendix C.

where  $\eta(\tau) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} q_\tau^{1/24} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} (1 - q_\tau^n)$  is the Dedekind  $\eta$ -function, and he proved that  $F(\tau)$  is an algebraic integer when  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  is quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Using Watson's identity and an integrality result of Stark's on  $L$ -functions at  $s = 1$ , in [1, Thm. 6.2] it is shown that  $F(\tau)$  is an algebraic integral unit for such  $\tau$ . Ramanujan formulated other modular equations satisfied by  $F$ , and there has been a lot of research (for example, see [1], [9], [23], and [24], as well as [2] for an overall survey) investigating these (and other) explicit equations and using them to explicitly compute  $F$  at specific imaginary quadratic points in  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , making creative use of Watson's identity and its variants.

In [8], Watson's identity is used to show that  $F$  is a level-5 modular function, and by determining the minimal polynomial of  $F$  over  $\mathbf{Q}(j)$ , it is proved that  $\mathbf{Q}(F)$  is the field of modular functions of level-5 having Fourier expansion at  $\infty$  with rational coefficients (this was already known to Klein [7, vol. 2, p. 383], who described  $F$  as a ratio of theta-functions). They employ Shimura reciprocity to describe the Galois conjugates of singular values  $F(\tau)$  at quadratic imaginary  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and thereby provide an algorithm to compute the minimal polynomial (over  $\mathbf{Q}$ ) of any such singular value. Using standard Kummer theory (and the fact that  $F(\tau)$  lies in an abelian—hence solvable—extension of  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$ ), they show how to compute radical formulae for  $F(\tau)$ , thereby settling (in the affirmative) Ramanujan's claim that that the singular values of  $F$  on the imaginary axis can be “exactly found.”

In this paper, we work with the function  $j_5 = 1/F$ ; as is well-known, this is a level-5 modular function with a unique simple pole at the cusp  $\infty \in X(5)$ , so it defines an isomorphism  $j_5 : X(5) \simeq \mathbf{CP}^1$ . At the end of §4 we will recall a proof of this fact which does not rest on the crutch of Watson's identity. Our aim is to deduce additional properties of  $j_5$  (and hence of  $F$ ) by means of the good behavior of  $j_5$  with respect to certain standard canonical integral models for  $X(5)$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$  and  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  that we describe in §2; since  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5] \cap \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5] = \mathbf{Z}$ , we will also be able to obtain results over  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

In §3–§4 we quickly review Shimura's canonical models for modular curves and some properties of Klein forms, and in §5 we use Klein forms and arithmetic models of modular curves to construct an integral model  $J_5$  for  $j_5$  on the model  $X(5)_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}$  and to show that the rational function  $J_5$  has both its zero and polar loci supported in the subscheme of cusps over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  (a contrast with the classical  $j$ -function on  $X(1)$  over  $\mathbf{Z}$ ). From this we obtain a new geometric proof that the values of  $j_5$  (or Ramanujan's  $F$ ) at CM-points are algebraic integral units (see Corollary 5.6). An easy application of Shimura's reciprocity law on canonical models implies that for an arbitrary  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  that is quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , the extension  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau, j_5(\tau))/\mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  is an *abelian* extension of  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  that is unramified away from 5; we give the associated open subgroup in the idele class group  $\mathbf{A}_K^\times/K^\times$  in Corollary 5.7. (Such a description is not included in [8].) For example, we shall see that if the elliptic curve  $\mathbf{C}^\times/q_\tau^{\mathbf{Z}}$  has CM-order  $\mathcal{O}_\tau \subseteq \mathcal{O}_K$  and  $\tau$  is 5-integral, then  $K(j_5(\tau))$  is contained in the ray class field of conductor  $5 \cdot [\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$  for  $K$ , and if moreover  $\tau$  is a 5-unit and  $\mathcal{O}_\tau = \mathcal{O}_K$  then  $K(j_5(\tau))$  is the ray class field of conductor 5 for  $K$ . In particular, this latter ray class field is always generated by a singular value of Ramanujan's function  $F$ .

A further application of the algebro-geometric link with modular curves is pursued in §6: for all  $n$  relatively prime to 5, we construct primitive polynomials  $F_n \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  that are absolutely irreducible over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and satisfy  $F_n(j_5(\tau), j_5(n\tau)) = 0$ . These  $F_n$ 's for very small  $n$  have appeared in the literature on a case-by-case basis, and their existence in general was known to Klein long ago, but there does not seem to have been a systematic construction given before for all  $n$  relatively prime to 5 in a manner that is well-adapted to a study of algebraic properties (such as absolute irreducibility over  $\mathbf{Q}$ ). We also establish an analogue of Kronecker's congruence for  $F_p \bmod p$ , but the shape of the congruence depends on  $p \bmod 5$ . It seems worth emphasizing that geometry can establish such congruences only up to a unit scaling factor; to eliminate the unit ambiguity, it is essential to bring in the analytic perspective via  $q$ -expansions. Similarly, the symmetry  $\Phi_n(Y, X) = \Phi_n(X, Y)$  for the classical level- $n$  modular polynomial has an analogue for  $F_n$  when  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$ , as we show in §6, and geometric methods prove the result up to a factor in  $\mathbf{Z}^\times = \{\pm 1\}$ ; we need  $q$ -expansions to determine the sign. Explicitly, if  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  then  $F_n$  is symmetric, but if  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  then  $X^{\deg_Y F_n} F_n(Y, -1/X) = \varepsilon_n F_n(X, Y)$  for a sign  $\varepsilon_n$  that depends on  $n$  in a slightly

complicated manner; for example, if  $n = p$  is an odd prime congruent to  $\pm 2 \pmod{5}$  then  $\varepsilon_n = 1$ , and  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  for  $n = 2, 32, 72, \dots$  (see Theorem 6.5).

One virtue of computing the  $F_n$ 's for many  $n$ 's is that we thereby noticed that  $F_n$  has remarkably small coefficients; we give a list of  $F_n$ 's for  $n \leq 27$  in Appendix C. The reason for such smallness of coefficients is that the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  has small coefficients, and in §7 we provide an estimate on the coefficients of  $j_5$  that is obtained by adapting the circle-method arguments of Rademacher for the usual  $j$ -function. In [4], P. Cohen established asymptotic estimates on the maximal absolute value of a coefficient of the classical level- $n$  modular polynomial  $\Phi_n$  (as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ), and in §7 we also give a variant on this method that applies to the  $F_n$ 's when  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$ . One consequence of these estimates is that, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the largest coefficient for  $F_n$  (in absolute value) is approximately the 60th root of the largest coefficient for  $\Phi_n$ . This explains the apparent smallness of the coefficients of the  $F_n$ 's in examples with  $(n, 5) = 1$ .

We conclude in §8 by addressing the question of whether a singular value  $j_5(\tau)$  can be expressed in radicals *inside of  $\mathbf{R}$*  when  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$ . For example, one may wish to interpret Ramanujan's assertion that  $j_5(\tau)$  can always be "exactly found" when  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$  as saying that  $j_5(\tau) \in \mathbf{R}$  lies in a radical tower of subfields of  $\mathbf{R}$  for such  $\tau$ . All previously published explicit radical formulas for such real singular values do satisfy this condition, but we will show (in Theorem 8.5) that these many examples are exceptions to the rule: if  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$  and  $j_5(\tau)$  lies in a radical tower in  $\mathbf{R}$  then all odd prime factors of  $[\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau)) : \mathbf{Q}]$  are Fermat primes (we can only prove the converse in the easy case when  $[\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau)) : \mathbf{Q}]$  is a power of 2, and the *casus irreducibilis* suggests that the converse is probably not true in general). This is a *very restrictive* necessary condition for the existence of a radical formula in  $\mathbf{R}$ , and it applies (with the same proof) to singular values of the usual  $j$ -function on the imaginary axis. In all published examples of radical formulas for singular values of  $j_5$  on the imaginary axis, the degree of the singular value over  $\mathbf{Q}$  has been of the form  $2^e$ ,  $2^e \cdot 3$ , or  $2^e \cdot 5$ ; this Fermat criterion is not satisfied for  $j_5(\sqrt{-101})$  (see Example 8.4), so the stronger interpretation of Ramanujan's claim using real radical towers is false. For  $\tau^2 = q \in \mathbf{Q}$  with the height of  $q$  growing to  $\infty$ , it seems certain that in the asymptotic sense the necessary Fermat criterion fails to be satisfied 100% of the time.

NOTATION. The notation we use is standard, but we record one mild abuse of notation: we write  $G$  rather than the customary  $\underline{G}$  to denote the constant group scheme associated to an abstract group  $G$  (when working over a base scheme  $S$  that will always be understood from context). This is most commonly used in the case  $G = \mathbf{Z}/n\mathbf{Z}$  for a positive integer  $n$ .

## 2. ARITHMETIC MODELS AND ANALYTIC MODELS OF MODULAR CURVES

In this section we summarize some basic definitions and theorems in the arithmetic theory of modular curves, and we link it up with the analytic models that are obtained as quotients of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Everything we say in this section is well-known.

Pick a positive integer  $N$ . We will begin our work with level- $N$  moduli problems over the ring of integers  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$  of a splitting field  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_N)$  of the  $N$ th cyclotomic polynomial, with  $\zeta_N$  a choice of root of this polynomial. In [10], Katz and Mazur use Drinfeld level structures to develop a systematic theory of elliptic-curve moduli problems over integer rings (so they can study  $N$ -torsion moduli even if  $N$  is not a unit on the base scheme); unfortunately, this work omits a treatment of the modular interpretation of the cusps. The earlier work of Deligne and Rapoport [5] required the level to be invertible on the base (*i.e.*, to study moduli of  $N$ -torsion level structures, they required the base scheme to live over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ ) but it introduced the theory of generalized elliptic curves to provide a modular interpretation along the cusps.

*Example 2.1.* Let  $n$  be a positive integer and  $S$  a scheme. Consider a set of  $n$  copies of  $\mathbf{P}_S^1$  indexed by  $\mathbf{Z}/n\mathbf{Z}$ . Let  $C_n$  be the  $S$ -scheme obtained by gluing 0 on the  $i$ th copy of  $\mathbf{P}_S^1$  to  $\infty$  on the  $(i+1)$ th copy of  $\mathbf{P}_S^1$ ; when  $n = 1$  this is the nodal plane cubic  $Y^2 + XY = X^3$ . We call  $C_n$  the *standard Néron  $n$ -gon* over  $S$ .

The  $S$ -smooth locus  $C_n^{\text{sm}}$  is naturally identified with  $\mathbf{G}_m \times (\mathbf{Z}/n\mathbf{Z})$ , and with this evident  $S$ -group structure there is a unique action of  $C_n^{\text{sm}}$  on  $C_n$  extending the group law on  $C_n^{\text{sm}}$ . Equipped with this data,  $C_n$  is a generalized elliptic curve. Observe that the  $n$ -torsion in  $C_n^{\text{sm}}$  is naturally isomorphic to  $\mu_n \times (\mathbf{Z}/n\mathbf{Z})$ .

In [5, II, 1.15], it is proved that a generalized elliptic curve over an algebraically closed field must be isomorphic to either a smooth elliptic curve or to a standard Néron polygon.

The works of Deligne–Rapoport and Katz–Mazur can be combined, and hence it makes sense to consider the moduli functor that classifies *full level- $N$  structures* on generalized elliptic curves: these are pairs  $(E, \iota)$  where  $E$  is a generalized elliptic curve over an arbitrary scheme  $S$  and  $\iota : (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^2 \rightarrow E^{\text{sm}}(S)[N]$  is a Drinfeld  $(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^2$ -structure on the smooth separated  $S$ -group  $E^{\text{sm}}$ . Such an  $\iota$  is called  *$S$ -ample* (or *ample*) if its image meets all irreducible components of all geometric fibers of  $E$  over  $S$ . If  $E$  admits a full level- $N$  structure, then its non-smooth geometric fibers must have number of sides divisible by  $N$  and  $E^{\text{sm}}[N]$  must be a finite locally free  $S$ -group with order  $N^2$ . In this case, there is a functorial alternating  $\mu_N$ -valued self-duality  $e_N$  on the  $N$ -torsion, and for any  $\iota$  as above it is automatic (essentially by [10, 10.4.1]) that  $\zeta = e_N(\iota(1, 0), \iota(0, 1)) \in \mu_N(S)$  is a root of the  $N$ th cyclotomic polynomial. We say that  $(E, \iota)$  is of *type  $\zeta$* .

The synthesis of the above work of Katz–Mazur and Deligne–Rapoport is (partly) summarized in the next two theorems (see [10, 10.9.1, 10.9.6-7] for proofs, and note that the theory of level structures in [10, Ch. 1] applies to the smooth locus of a generalized elliptic curve):

**Theorem 2.2.** *Let  $N$  be a positive integer. There exists a coarse moduli scheme  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$  for the moduli functor that classifies generalized elliptic curves equipped with an ample full level- $N$  structure of type  $\zeta_N$ . This moduli scheme is normal, proper, and flat over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$ , and its fibers are geometrically connected with pure dimension 1. It is smooth away from the supersingular geometric points in characteristics dividing  $N$ , and when  $N \geq 3$  it is a fine moduli scheme over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ .*

The second theorem we require from [5] and [10] concerns the formal structure along the subscheme of cusps in  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ . There is an elegant abstract technique for defining such a subscheme [5, II, 1.15], but for our expository purposes we will use an *ad hoc* trick as in [10]: there is a finite flat map  $j : X(N)^{\text{can}} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]}^1$  induced by formation of  $j$ -invariants, and the reduced subscheme underlying the preimage of the section  $\infty \in \mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N])$  is called the *cuspidal subscheme*  $X(N)_{\infty}^{\text{can}}$ . This is finite and flat over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$ . The key fact is:

**Theorem 2.3.** *The closed subscheme  $X(N)_{\infty}^{\text{can}}$  is a finite disjoint union of copies of  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$ , and the formal completion of  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$  along this closed subscheme is canonically isomorphic to a finite disjoint union of copies of  $\text{Spf } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N][[q^{1/N}]]$ .*

Let us now define the cuspidal section  $\infty \in X(N)^{\text{can}}(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N])$  algebraically. This definition rests on the standard Néron  $N$ -gon  $C_N$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$ . Since the smooth locus  $C_N^{\text{sm}}$  is canonically identified with  $\mathbf{G}_m \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$  as a group scheme, we have  $C_N^{\text{sm}}[N] = \mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$ . There is a canonical full level- $N$  structure of type  $\zeta_N$  defined by the map

$$\iota : \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$$

that carries  $(1, 0)$  to  $(\zeta_N, 0)$  and carries  $(0, 1)$  to  $(1, 1)$ . This defines a section

$$\infty : \text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N] \hookrightarrow X(N)^{\text{can}}$$

that is one of the components of  $X(N)_{\infty}^{\text{can}}$ .

To explain the link between the preceding algebraic theory and the analytic theory, fix a positive integer  $N$  and a primitive  $N$ th root of unity  $\zeta$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ . We avoid picking a preferred choice of  $\zeta$  (such as  $e^{\pm 2\pi\sqrt{-1}/N}$ ) because the algebraic theory must treat all choices on an equal footing, and we want to argue in a manner that translates most easily into the algebraic theory. Consider the moduli functor  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{\zeta}(N)$  that classifies analytic families of full level- $N$  structures of type  $\zeta$ . For  $N \geq 3$ , these structures admit no non-trivial automorphisms and there is a universal analytic family over an open modular curve  $Y_{\zeta}(N)$  that is the complement of finitely many points (the *cusps*) in a compact connected Riemann surface  $X_{\zeta}(N)$ . For  $N \geq 3$  we may identify  $X_{\zeta}(N)$  as a fine moduli space for the moduli functor that classifies analytic families of full level- $N$  structures of type  $\zeta$  on generalized elliptic curves [5, VI, §5; VII, §4], and this is isomorphic to the analytification of the complex fiber of  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$  via the map  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N] \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  carrying  $\zeta_N$  to  $\zeta$ .

*Remark 2.4.* The relative algebraic theory of the Tate curve, as developed in [5, VII], ensures that the  $q^{1/N}$ -parameter in Theorem 2.3 coincides with the canonical local coordinate at the cusp  $\infty$  in the analytic theory when we use the identification of completed algebraic and analytic local rings at cusps on a complex fiber of  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ . In what follows we will make essential use of this compatibility between the analytic and algebraic theories of  $q$ -expansion.

Fix  $N \geq 3$ . There is a very well-known uniformization of the modular curve  $Y_\zeta(N)$  via the analytic map

$$\pi_\zeta : \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R} \rightarrow Y_\zeta(N)$$

that sends  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  to the point in  $Y_\zeta(N)$  classifying the pair  $(E_\tau, \iota_{\tau, \zeta})$ , where

$$(2.1) \quad E_\tau = \mathbf{C}^\times / q_\tau^{\mathbf{Z}}, \quad \iota_{\tau, \zeta}(1, 0) = \zeta \bmod q_\tau^{\mathbf{Z}}, \quad \iota_{\tau, \zeta}(0, 1) = q_\tau^{1/N} \bmod q_\tau^{\mathbf{Z}}.$$

There is a functorial left action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(N)$  defined by

$$(2.2) \quad [\gamma]_\zeta(E, \iota) = (E, \iota \circ \gamma')$$

with  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} d & b \\ c & a \end{pmatrix}$  for  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ , but the lift of  $[\gamma]_\zeta$  (via  $\pi_\zeta$ ) to an action on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  depends on  $\zeta$ . On each connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , the lift of  $[\gamma]_\zeta$  is induced by the standard linear-fractional action of any  $\gamma_{\mathfrak{H}} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  that lifts  $\begin{pmatrix} a & u_{\mathfrak{H}}b \\ u_{\mathfrak{H}}^{-1}c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ , where  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i_{\mathfrak{H}} u_{\mathfrak{H}}/N}$  for  $i_{\mathfrak{H}} = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$  and  $u_{\mathfrak{H}} \in (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times$ . Since  $u_{-\mathfrak{H}} = -u_{\mathfrak{H}}$ , we see that the action of  $\gamma_{-\mathfrak{H}}$  on  $-\mathfrak{H}$  is intertwined with the action of  $\gamma_{\mathfrak{H}}$  on  $\mathfrak{H}$  by means of negation on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Observe also that the analytic action  $[\cdot]_\zeta$  of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(N)$  arises from an algebraic action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$  that is defined by means of the same moduli-theoretic definition  $(E, \iota) \mapsto (E, \iota \circ \gamma')$ .

*Remark 2.5.* For any two primitive  $N$ th roots of unity  $\zeta$  and  $\zeta'$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ , we may identify  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_\zeta(N)$  and  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{\zeta'}(N)$  by composing  $\iota$  with the automorphism of  $(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^2$  defined by  $(n, m) \mapsto (en, m)$  for the unique  $e \in (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times$  such that  $\zeta' = \zeta^e$ . This sets up an abstract isomorphism  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} : X_\zeta(N) \simeq X_{\zeta'}(N)$  that carries  $\pi_\zeta$  to  $\pi_{\zeta'}$ . The isomorphism  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta}$  is generally not  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ -equivariant: if  $\zeta' = \zeta^e$  for  $e \in (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times$  then  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} \circ [\gamma]_\zeta = [\gamma_e^{-1} \gamma \gamma_e]_{\zeta'} \circ \alpha_{\zeta', \zeta}$  with  $\gamma_e = \begin{pmatrix} e & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Note that  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta}$  is equivariant for the action of  $(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times$  via the diagonal embedding  $c \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$  into  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ .

The map  $\pi_\zeta$  presents  $Y_\zeta(N)$  as the quotient of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  by the group of automorphisms generated by negation and the standard linear fractional action of the principal congruence subgroup

$$\Gamma(N) = \ker(\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})).$$

The uniformization  $\pi_\zeta$  gives rise to a canonical cusp  $\infty_\zeta \in X_\zeta(N)$ , and the parameter  $q_\tau^{1/N}$  goes over to a canonical local coordinate  $q_{\infty_\zeta}$  around  $\infty_\zeta \in X_\zeta(N)$ . Under the identification of  $X_\zeta(N)$  with the analytic fiber of  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ ,  $\infty_\zeta$  arises from  $\infty \in X(N)^{\text{can}}(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N])$  and  $q_{\infty_\zeta}$  corresponds to  $q^{1/N}$ .

For  $N = 5$ , something remarkable happens: there is another canonical cusp  $0_\zeta$  (this is *not*  $\pi_\zeta(0)$ ): we define  $0_\zeta$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  to be the image of  $\infty_\zeta$  under the action of  $\begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  for a generator  $c$  of  $(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})^\times$ ; this  $c$  is unique up to a sign, and so the choice of  $c$  does not matter. Explicitly, since  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 5 & 13 \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  lifts such a matrix (with  $c = 2$ ), we see that if  $\mathfrak{H}$  is a connected component of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  containing  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  then for  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  we may extend  $\pi_\zeta|_{\mathfrak{H}}$  by continuity to points of  $\mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Q})$  and  $\pi_\zeta(2/5) = 0_\zeta$ . In particular,  $\pi_\zeta(0) \neq 0_\zeta$ . When working algebraically with  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ , we define

the cusp  $0 \in X(5)^{\text{can}}(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5])$  in terms of  $\infty$  exactly as we just defined  $0_\zeta$  in terms of  $\infty_\zeta$ . The isomorphism  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} : X_\zeta(N) \simeq X_{\zeta'}(N)$  carries  $\infty_\zeta$  to  $\infty_{\zeta'}$ ,  $q_{\infty_\zeta}$  to  $q_{\infty_{\zeta'}}$ , and (for  $N = 5$ )  $0_\zeta$  to  $0_{\zeta'}$ .

By means of  $\pi_\zeta$ , we may identify the meromorphic function field of  $X_\zeta(N)$  with the field of *level- $N$  modular functions*; i.e., the meromorphic functions on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  that are invariant under the actions of negation and of  $\Gamma(N)$ , and that are meromorphic at the points of  $\mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Q})$  when such points are approached through neighborhoods in the horocycle topology on either connected component of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . The compact connected Riemann surface  $X_\zeta(N)$  has genus zero for  $N \leq 5$ , and so for such  $N$  the meromorphic function field of  $X_\zeta(N)$  is a rational function field  $\mathbf{C}(j_{N, \zeta})$  where  $j_{N, \zeta} : X_\zeta(N) \simeq \mathbf{CP}^1$  is an isomorphism onto the Riemann sphere. To uniquely define  $j_{N, \zeta}$  for  $N \leq 5$ , we need to impose some additional normalization conditions at cusps as follows.

For  $N \leq 5$ , we can define the modular function  $j_{N, \zeta}$  up to an additive constant by requiring that  $j_{N, \zeta}(\infty_\zeta) = [1 : 0]$  and that the Laurent expansion of  $j_{N, \zeta}$  at  $\infty_\zeta$  have leading coefficient 1 with respect to the local coordinate  $q_{\infty_\zeta}$ . We eliminate the additive constant for  $N = 5$  by demanding  $j_{5, \zeta}(0_\zeta) = 0$ . That is,

$$(2.3) \quad \text{div}(j_{5, \zeta}) = (0_\zeta) - (\infty_\zeta).$$

For  $N = 5$ , the isomorphism  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} : X_\zeta(5) \simeq X_{\zeta'}(5)$  must therefore carry  $j_{5, \zeta}$  to  $j_{5, \zeta'}$ , so  $j_{5, \zeta} \circ \pi_\zeta$  is independent of  $\zeta$ :

**Definition 2.6.** The common function  $j_{5, \zeta} \circ \pi_\zeta$  on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  is denoted  $j_5$ .

At the end of §4 we will review the proof of the well-known fact that  $1/j_5$  is Ramanujan's continued fraction  $F$ .

Our ability to get integral algebraic results for  $j_5$  will rest on the integral model  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ , but to get results over  $\mathbf{Z}$  we require a model over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . More specifically, we shall now construct a model over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ ; the equality  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5] \cap \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5] = \mathbf{Z}$  will ensure that we are able to get results over  $\mathbf{Z}$  and not only over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ .

Fix  $N \geq 3$ . We shall define a twisted modular curve  $X_\mu(N)$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$  that naturally descends the  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N, 1/N]$ -scheme  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ ; in particular,  $X_\mu(N)$  must be proper and smooth over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/N]$  with geometrically connected fibers of dimension 1. The scheme  $X_\mu(N)$  is defined to represent the  $\Gamma_\mu(N)$ -moduli functor that classifies pairs  $(E, \iota)$  where  $E$  is a generalized elliptic curve over a variable  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -scheme  $S$  and

$$\iota : \mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z} \rightarrow E^{\text{sm}}[N]$$

is an isomorphism of finite étale  $S$ -groups such that  $\iota$  is ample on  $E$  and intertwines the Weil pairing on  $E^{\text{sm}}[N]$  with the evident  $\mu_N$ -valued symplectic form on  $\mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$ . On the category of  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N][1/N]$ -schemes, this moduli functor is naturally isomorphic to the one that is represented by the  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N]$ -scheme  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$  upon inverting  $N$ , and hence the existence of  $X_\mu(N)$  is established by using finite étale descent with a suitable action of  $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_N)/\mathbf{Q})$  on  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ . We likewise get  $Y_\mu(N)$  by descending the open affine complement  $Y(N)^{\text{can}}$  of the cuspidal subscheme in  $X(N)^{\text{can}}$ .

### 3. CANONICAL MODELS

For our purposes, we need to know that the modular curves  $X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  over  $\mathbf{Q}$  are both moduli spaces (as explained above) as well as canonical models in the sense of Shimura (and hence have well-understood Galois-theoretic behavior at CM points). The link with Shimura's theory rests on a  $q$ -expansion principle for rational functions:

**Lemma 3.1.** *Let  $\zeta = e^{\pm 2\pi i/N}$  with  $i \in \mathbf{C}$  satisfying  $i^2 + 1 = 0$ . Using  $\pi_\zeta : \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R} \rightarrow Y_\zeta(N)$  to identify the meromorphic function field of  $X_\zeta(N)$  with the level- $N$  modular functions on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , the function field  $\mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(N))$  consists of the level- $N$  modular functions  $f$  such that the  $q$ -expansion of  $f$  at  $\infty$  (in the parameter  $q_\tau^{1/N}$ ) has coefficients in  $\mathbf{Q}$ .*

*Proof.* The arithmetic theory of the Tate curve provides a canonical isomorphism of complete local rings  $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{X_\mu(N),\infty} \simeq \mathbf{Q}[[q^{1/N}]]$ . The analytic theory of the Tate curve and our two choices for  $\zeta$  ensure that applying  $\mathbf{C} \widehat{\otimes}_{\mathbf{Q}}(\cdot)$  to this isomorphism yields *the same* calculation of the completed analytic local ring on  $X_\zeta(N)(\mathbf{C})$  at  $\infty$  as is obtained via  $\pi_\zeta$  and the analytic parameter  $q_\tau^{1/N}$ . Thus, the problem is purely algebraic: we must prove that if  $f \in \mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{C}})$  then  $f \in \mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(N))$  if the image of  $f$  in the local field  $\mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{C}})_\infty \simeq \mathbf{C}((q^{1/N}))$  lies in the subfield  $\mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(N))_\infty \simeq \mathbf{Q}((q^{1/N}))$ . Such an  $f$  is invariant under the action of  $\text{Aut}(\mathbf{C}/\mathbf{Q})$ , so we just have to prove that the fixed field of  $\text{Aut}(\mathbf{C}/\mathbf{Q})$  in  $\mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{C}})$  is  $\mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(N))$ .

More generally, let  $L/k$  be an extension of fields and  $K, E \subseteq L$  intermediate extensions linearly disjoint over  $k$  such that  $k$  is perfect,  $k$  is algebraically closed in  $E$ , and  $K$  is algebraically closed (e.g.,  $k = \mathbf{Q}$ ,  $K = \mathbf{C}$ ,  $E = \mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(N))$ ,  $L = \mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{C}})$ ). By linear disjointness, the ring  $K \otimes_k E$  is a domain and its fraction field is naturally isomorphic to the subfield  $KE \subseteq L$ , so  $KE$  admits a natural action of  $\text{Aut}(K/k)$ . It is a standard fact in the theory of linearly disjoint extensions that the  $\text{Aut}(K/k)$ -invariants in  $KE$  must be precisely the elements of  $E$ , and this gives what we need. ■

To apply this lemma, we use Shimura's canonical models for modular curves. Fix a connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , and let  $i = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$ . We are now going to apply Shimura's reciprocity law on canonical models, but we first need to explain why the moduli scheme  $X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  equipped with its canonical isomorphism

$$X_\mu(N)(\mathbf{C}) \simeq \Gamma(N) \backslash (\mathfrak{H} \cup \mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Q}))$$

is a canonical model in the sense of Shimura. This requires some preliminary notation, as follows.

Let  $G = \text{GL}_2$  and let  $Z = \mathbf{G}_m$  be its center. We write  $\mathbf{A}_L$  to denote the adèle ring of a number field  $L$ , and  $\mathbf{A}_L^\infty = L \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}$  to denote the ring of finite adèles for  $L$ . Let  $U$  be an open subgroup of  $G(\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{Q}})$  whose projection into  $G(\mathbf{R})$  lies in  $G(\mathbf{R})^0 = \text{GL}_2^+(\mathbf{R})$  and such that  $U$  contains  $Z(\mathbf{Q})G(\mathbf{R})^0 = \mathbf{Q}^\times \text{GL}_2^+(\mathbf{R})$  and  $G(\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{Q}})/U$  is compact. Let  $\Gamma_U = U \cap G(\mathbf{Q})$ . This is a discrete subgroup in  $G(\mathbf{R})^0$  that is commensurable with  $Z(\mathbf{Q}) \cdot (G(\mathbf{Z}) \cap G(\mathbf{R})^0) = \mathbf{Q}^\times \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ . The analytic quotient  $\Gamma_U \backslash \mathfrak{H}$  is the complement of finitely many points in a unique compact connected Riemann surface  $X_{\Gamma_U}$  whose meromorphic function field is the field of modular functions on  $\mathfrak{H}$  that are invariant under  $\Gamma_U$  for the standard action of  $\Gamma_U \subseteq G(\mathbf{R})^0$  on  $\mathfrak{H}$ . By Shimura's theory of canonical models (see [19, §6.7], especially [19, Prop. 6.27]),  $X_{\Gamma_U}$  admits a model  $X_U$  that is a smooth proper geometrically-connected curve defined over a number field  $k_U \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  such that  $k_U/\mathbf{Q}$  is abelian and, at CM-points of  $X_U$ , the arithmetic properties of special values of any  $h \in k_U(X_U)$  may be read off from Shimura's reciprocity law [19, 6.31]. Let us see how these generalities work out in a special case.

The subgroups  $U$  of most interest to us are

$$(3.1) \quad V_N = Z(\mathbf{Q})G(\mathbf{R})^0 \cdot \left\{ g \in G(\widehat{\mathbf{Z}}) \mid g \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N} \right\}.$$

By [19, Prop. 6.9(3), Rem. 6.28],  $X_{V_N}$  is a canonical model for  $X_{e^{2\pi i/N}}(N) = X(N)_{\mathbf{C}}^{\text{can}}$  via the embedding  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_N] \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  that sends  $\zeta_N$  to  $e^{2\pi i/N}$ , and  $k_{V_N} = \mathbf{Q}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(X_{V_N})$  is the field of level- $N$  modular functions on  $\mathfrak{H}$  whose  $q$ -expansion at  $\infty$  (in the parameter  $q_\tau^{1/N}$ ) has coefficients in  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Thus, by Lemma 3.1,  $X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  equipped with its canonical isomorphism  $X_\mu(N)(\mathbf{C}) \simeq X_{e^{2\pi i/N}}(N)$  is Shimura's canonical model  $X_{V_N}$  for  $X_{e^{2\pi i/N}}(N)$ .

Let  $y \in X_\mu(N)(\mathbf{C})$  be a CM-point (so we may identify  $y$  with a closed point, also denoted  $y$ , on  $X_\mu(N)$  with residue field  $\mathbf{Q}(y)$  embedded into  $\mathbf{C}$ ). Choose  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  with  $\pi_{e^{2\pi i\tau/N}}(\tau) = y$ , and consider the finite-dimensional  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebras  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  and  $A = \text{End}_{\mathbf{Q}}(K)$  as ring-schemes over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Q}$ . Let  $\rho : K^\times \rightarrow A^\times$  be the natural map of algebraic unit-groups induced by the natural ring-scheme map  $K \rightarrow A$ ; note that the determinant  $\det \rho : K^\times \rightarrow \mathbf{Q}^\times$  is the norm. Use the ordered  $\mathbf{Q}$ -basis  $\{\tau, 1\}$  of  $K$  to identify  $A$  with a matrix-algebra over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and hence to identify  $A^\times$  with  $\text{GL}_2$  as algebraic groups over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . On  $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{Q}}$ -points,  $\rho$

therefore defines a continuous homomorphism

$$(3.2) \quad \rho_\tau : \mathbf{A}_K^\times \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_\mathbf{Q})$$

that lands inside  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbf{A}_\mathbf{Q}) = \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbf{R}) \times \mathrm{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_\mathbf{Q}^\infty)$  and carries  $K^\times$  into  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$  and  $K_\infty^\times$  into  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbf{R})$ . As a special case of [19, 6.33], we thereby obtain:

**Theorem 3.2** (Shimura). *Let  $\overline{\mathbf{Q}} \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  be the algebraic closure of  $\mathbf{Q}$ . For any CM-point  $y \in X_\mu(N)(\overline{\mathbf{Q}}) \subseteq X_\mu(N)(\mathbf{C})$  and  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  with  $\pi_{e^{2\pi i\tau}/N}(\tau) = y$ , the compositum  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau, y) \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  of  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(y)$  is the finite abelian extension of  $K$  that is the class field associated to the open subgroup*

$$(K^\times \cdot \{s \in \mathbf{A}_K^\times \mid \rho_\tau(s) \in V_N\})/K^\times \subseteq \mathbf{A}_K^\times/K^\times,$$

with  $V_N$  as in (3.1). In particular, this extension is unramified at finite places away from  $N[\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$  where  $\mathcal{O}_\tau$  is the CM-order of  $\mathbf{C}^\times/q_\tau^\mathbf{Z}$ .

Let us record a useful easy corollary (to be applied with  $p = 5$ ):

**Corollary 3.3.** *Let  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  be imaginary quadratic, and assume  $N = p \geq 3$  is prime. Let  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$ ,  $y = \pi_{e^{2\pi i\tau}/p}(\tau) \in X_\mu(N)(\overline{\mathbf{Q}}) \subseteq X_\mu(N)(\mathbf{C})$ , and  $\mathcal{O}_\tau = \mathrm{End}(\mathbf{C}^\times/q_\tau^\mathbf{Z}) \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  the CM order for the fiber of the universal elliptic curve over  $y$ .*

*The finite abelian extension  $K(y)/K$  is associated to the open subgroup*

$$K^\times \cdot (K_\infty^\times \times U_\tau)/K^\times \subseteq \mathbf{A}_K^\times/K^\times,$$

where  $U_\tau \subseteq \prod_{v \nmid \infty} \mathcal{O}_{K,v}^\times = \prod_{\ell \neq p} (\mathbf{Z}_\ell \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_K)^\times$  is the group of finite ideles  $s = (s_\ell)$  whose  $\ell$ -component  $s_\ell \in (\mathbf{Z}_\ell \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_K)^\times$  lies in  $(\mathbf{Z}_\ell \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_\tau)^\times$  for  $\ell \neq p$  and whose  $p$ -component  $s_p \in (\mathbf{Z}_p \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_K)^\times$  satisfies

$$s_p \equiv 1 \pmod{\frac{p}{\tau} \cdot \mathbf{Z}_p \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_\tau}, \quad s_p \in \mathbf{Z}_p^\times + p(\mathbf{Z}_p \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_\tau).$$

*In particular,  $K(y)/K$  is unramified away from  $p[\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$  and if  $\tau$  is  $p$ -integral then  $K(y)$  is contained in the ray class field of conductor  $p[\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$  over  $K$ , with equality if moreover  $\mathcal{O}_\tau = \mathcal{O}_K$  and  $\tau$  is a  $p$ -unit.*

#### 4. KLEIN FORMS AND $j_5$

Let  $\zeta$  be a primitive 5th root of unity in  $\mathbf{C}$ . Recall that in §2 we defined the rational parameter  $j_{5,\zeta}$  for  $X_\zeta(5)$  by the requirements that  $\mathrm{div}(j_{5,\zeta}) = 0_\zeta - \infty_\zeta$  and that the Laurent expansion of  $j_{5,\zeta}$  at  $\infty_\zeta$  has leading coefficient 1 with respect to a canonical local coordinate  $q_{\infty_\zeta}$ . We also noted that the holomorphic function  $j_5 = j_{5,\zeta} \circ \pi_\zeta$  on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  is independent of  $\zeta$ . We need to give two explicit formulas for  $j_5$ , using Klein forms and a  $q$ -product; both will be useful in examples (e.g., the description via Klein forms makes it easy to compute the action of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $j_5$ ). Thus, we first shall give a rapid review of the basics of Klein forms, partly to give a convenient reference for formulas and partly to set the notation we shall use.

Let us begin with a review of some basic formulas from the theory of elliptic functions. Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in  $\mathbf{C}$ . Recall that the Weierstrass  $\sigma$ -function on  $\mathbf{C}$  is

$$\sigma(z, \Lambda) \stackrel{\mathrm{def}}{=} z \prod_{\omega \in \Lambda - \{0\}} \left(1 - \frac{z}{\omega}\right) e^{z/\omega + \frac{1}{2}(z/\omega)^2},$$

and (see [20, I.5]) for any  $\omega \in \Lambda$  we have

$$\frac{\sigma(z + \omega, \Lambda)}{\sigma(z, \Lambda)} = \varepsilon_\Lambda(\omega) e^{\eta_\Lambda(\omega)(z + \omega/2)},$$

where  $\varepsilon_\Lambda(\omega) = 1$  (resp.  $\varepsilon(\omega) = -1$ ) if and only if  $\omega \in 2\Lambda$  (resp.  $\omega \in \Lambda - 2\Lambda$ ), and  $\eta_\Lambda : \Lambda \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  is the additive *quasi-period* map that measures the failure of the Weierstrass function  $-\wp_\Lambda$  to integrate to a  $\Lambda$ -periodic function on  $\mathbf{C}$ . If we let

$$\Lambda_\tau = \mathbf{Z}\tau \oplus \mathbf{Z}$$



for  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , then  $(z, \tau) \mapsto \wp_{\Lambda_\tau}(z)$  is holomorphic, and so  $\tau \mapsto \eta_{\Lambda_\tau}(1)$  and  $\tau \mapsto \eta_{\Lambda_\tau}(\tau)$  are holomorphic. Let  $\eta(\cdot, \Lambda) : \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \Lambda \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  be the  $\mathbf{R}$ -linear extension of  $\eta_\Lambda$ ; this is not holomorphic, but clearly

$$\tau \mapsto \eta(a_1\tau + a_2, \mathbf{Z}\tau \oplus \mathbf{Z}) = a_1\eta_{\Lambda_\tau}(\tau) + a_2\eta_{\Lambda_\tau}(1)$$

is holomorphic on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  for a fixed  $a = (a_1, a_2) \in \mathbf{R}^2$ .

Let  $\text{Isom}_{\mathbf{R}}(\mathbf{R}^2, \mathbf{C})$  denote the set of  $\mathbf{R}$ -linear isomorphisms  $\mathbf{R}^2 \simeq \mathbf{C}$ . For  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  we define  $W_\tau : \mathbf{R}^2 \simeq \mathbf{C}$  by  $W_\tau(0, 1) = 1$  and  $W_\tau(1, 0) = \tau$ ; these are exactly the  $W \in \text{Isom}_{\mathbf{R}}(\mathbf{R}^2, \mathbf{C})$  such that  $W(0, 1) = 1$ , and  $W_\tau(\mathbf{Z}^2) = \Lambda_\tau$ .

**Definition 4.1.** Choose  $a \in \mathbf{Q}^2$  and  $W \in \text{Isom}_{\mathbf{R}}(\mathbf{R}^2, \mathbf{C})$ , and let  $z = W(a) \in \mathbf{C}$  and  $\Lambda = W(\mathbf{Z}^2)$ . The Klein form  $\kappa_a : \text{Isom}_{\mathbf{R}}(\mathbf{R}^2, \mathbf{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  is

$$(4.1) \quad \kappa_a(W) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{-\eta(W(a), W(\mathbf{Z}^2)) \cdot W(a)/2} \sigma(W(a), W(\mathbf{Z}^2)) = e^{-\eta(z, \Lambda)z/2} \sigma(z, \Lambda).$$

We shall write  $\kappa_a(\tau)$  to denote  $\kappa_a(W_\tau)$ , so  $\tau \mapsto \kappa_a(\tau)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . The transformation law  $\kappa_{(a_1, a_2)}(-\tau) = -\kappa_{(a_1, -a_2)}(\tau)$  is immediate from the definitions, and this lets us pass between connected components of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  when working with Klein forms.

The Klein forms satisfy several additional well-known obvious properties that we shall use, and so for ease of reference we summarize the properties that we will need:

- They are homogenous of degree 1:

$$(4.2) \quad \kappa_a(\lambda W) = \lambda \kappa_a(W)$$

for any  $\lambda \in \mathbf{C}^\times$ . This allows us to systematically pass between  $\kappa_a(\tau)$ 's and  $\kappa_a(W)$ 's.

- For  $a \in \mathbf{Q}^2$ ,  $W \in \text{Isom}_{\mathbf{R}}(\mathbf{R}^2, \mathbf{C})$ , and  $b = (b_1, b_2) \in \mathbf{Z}^2$ , we have

$$\kappa_{a+b}(W) = \epsilon_W(a, b) \kappa_a(W)$$

for an explicit root of unity  $\epsilon_W(a, b)$  (determined by Legendre's period relation for  $\eta_\Lambda$ ). If  $W = W_\tau$  and  $a = (a_1, a_2)$  then

$$(4.3) \quad \kappa_{a+b}(\tau) = \epsilon_\tau(a, b) \kappa_a(\tau)$$

for  $b = (b_1, b_2) \in \mathbf{Z}^2$ , where

$$(4.4) \quad \epsilon_\tau(a, b) = (-1)^{b_1+b_2+b_1b_2} \exp(\pi i_\tau(a_1b_2 - b_1a_2))$$

with  $i_\tau^2 = -1$  and  $i_\tau$  in the connected component of  $\tau$  in  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ .

- For  $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbf{Z}^2) = \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ , we have  $\kappa_a(W \circ \gamma) = \kappa_{\gamma(a)}(W)$ . An equivalent formulation is

$$(4.5) \quad \kappa_a(\gamma(\tau)) = j(\gamma, \tau) \kappa_{\gamma(a)}(\tau),$$

where  $j(\gamma, \tau) = u\tau + v$  is the standard automorphy factor for  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} r & s \\ u & v \end{pmatrix}$ .

- Fix  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and  $a = (a_1, a_2) \in \mathbf{Q}^2$ . Define  $q = e^{2\pi i_\tau z}$  with  $z = W_\tau(a) \in \mathbf{C}$ . We have

$$(4.6) \quad \kappa_a(\tau) = -\frac{q_\tau^{(1/2)(a_1^2 - a_1)}}{2\pi i_\tau} e^{\pi i_\tau a_2(a_1 - 1)} (1 - q) \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1 - q_\tau^n q)(1 - q_\tau^n / q)}{(1 - q_\tau^n)^2}.$$

This follows from the product formula in [14, §18.2, Thm. 4].

We will need to explicitly construct level- $N$  modular functions for  $N = 5$ , and this is most easily done by using Klein forms and the criterion in:

**Lemma 4.2.** Fix a positive integer  $N \geq 1$  and a finite subset  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq (N^{-1}\mathbf{Z})^2$ . Let  $m : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  be a function. Define the meromorphic function

$$f = \prod_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}} \kappa_\alpha^{m(\alpha)}$$

on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Let  $Q : (N\mathbf{Z})^2 \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  be the quadratic form

$$Q(x) = \sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} m(a) \langle a, x \rangle^2,$$

where  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : (N^{-1}\mathbf{Z})^2 \times (N\mathbf{Z})^2 \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  is the evident duality pairing.

The function  $f$  is an automorphic form on  $\Gamma(N)$  of weight  $-\sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} m(a)$  if and only if  $Q$  vanishes modulo  $N/\gcd(N, 2)$ . If  $\mathcal{A}$  is stable under  $(a_1, a_2) \mapsto (a_1, -a_2)$ , then  $f$  is invariant under  $\tau \mapsto -\tau$  if  $m(a_1, a_2) = m(a_1, -a_2)$  for all  $a = (a_1, a_2) \in \mathcal{A}$ .

*Proof.* The vanishing of the quadratic form amounts to a vanishing condition on coefficients, and the equivalence of  $f$  being an automorphic form on  $\Gamma(N)$  and such vanishing of coefficients is proved in [13, p. 68]. The final part concerning invariance under  $\tau \mapsto -\tau$  is trivial.  $\blacksquare$

**Theorem 4.3.** *On  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , we have*

$$(4.7) \quad j_5 = \frac{\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, 0) \kappa(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{1}{5}) \kappa(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{2}{5}) \kappa(\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{2}{5}) \kappa(\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})}{\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, 0) \kappa(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{5}) \kappa(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{2}{5}) \kappa(\frac{1}{5}, -\frac{2}{5}) \kappa(\frac{1}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})}$$

and

$$(4.8) \quad j_5(\tau) = q_\tau^{-1/5} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1 - q_\tau^{5n-2})(1 - q_\tau^{5n-3})}{(1 - q_\tau^{5n-4})(1 - q_\tau^{5n-1})}.$$

*Proof.* Let us define  $\mathcal{J}_5$  to be the ratio of products of Klein forms in (4.7); we will prove that  $\mathcal{J}_5$  satisfies the properties that uniquely characterize  $j_5$ . The invariance  $\mathcal{J}_5(-\tau) = \mathcal{J}_5(\tau)$  follows from the identity  $\kappa_{(a_1, a_2)}(-\tau) = \kappa_{(a_1, -a_2)}(\tau)$ . The product formula (4.8) for  $\mathcal{J}_5$  follows easily from (4.6). By Lemma 4.2 with  $N = 5$ , taking

$$\mathcal{A} = \{(\ell/5, k/5) : -2 \leq k \leq 2, \ell = 1, 2\}, \quad m(\ell/5, k/5) = (-1)^\ell,$$

we deduce that  $\mathcal{J}_5$  is a level-5 modular function. The canonical surjection  $\pi_\zeta : \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R} \rightarrow Y_\zeta(5)$  lets us consider  $\mathcal{J}_5$  as a meromorphic function  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta}$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$ . By construction, we have  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta} \circ \pi_\zeta = \mathcal{J}_5$ , and so the isomorphism  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} : X_\zeta(5) \simeq X_{\zeta'}(5)$  as in Remark 2.5 carries  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta}$  to  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta'}$ .

The product expansion (4.8) makes it clear that  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta}$  has no poles on  $Y_\zeta(5)$ . Thus, the only possible poles are at the cusps. From the  $q$ -expansion (4.8) we see that

$$\text{ord}_{\infty_\zeta} \mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta} = -1$$

and that the  $q$ -expansion of  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta}$  at  $\infty_\zeta$  begins with  $1/q_{\infty_\zeta} = 1/q^{1/5}$ . It remains to show that  $\mathcal{J}_{5, \zeta}$  has no poles at the other cusps, and that its unique zero is at the cusp  $0_\zeta$ . Moreover, it is enough to consider a single  $\zeta$ . We shall choose a connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and work with  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  and  $\tau \in \mathfrak{H}$  where  $i \in \mathfrak{H}$  is the unique point satisfying  $i^2 = -1$ ; this choice yields the standard formulas on  $\mathfrak{H}$  when (via  $\pi_\zeta$ ) we lift the action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$ .

The transformation formulas for Klein forms under  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  make it easy to express  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ -conjugates of  $\mathcal{J}_5$  in terms of Klein forms. In this way, the transitivity of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on the 12 cusps of  $X_\zeta(5)$  enables us to compute the  $q$ -expansion of  $\mathcal{J}_5$  at each cusp. This computation shows that  $\mathcal{J}_5$  has no poles at cusps away from  $\infty_\zeta$  and it only vanishes at the cusp  $\pi_\zeta(2/5)$  for  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$ . In §2 we showed  $\pi_\zeta(2/5) = 0_\zeta$  for any  $\zeta$ .  $\blacksquare$

Using the well-known Rogers–Ramanujan identities, it can be shown [17, p. 155] that

$$F(\tau) = q_\tau^{1/5} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1 - q_\tau^{5n-1})(1 - q_\tau^{5n-4})}{(1 - q_\tau^{5n-2})(1 - q_\tau^{5n-3})}.$$

By (4.8), this proves the identity  $F = 1/j_5$ . Unfortunately, we do not know a more direct way to verify that Ramanujan's  $F$  is a (level-5) modular function.

## 5. APPLICATION OF ARITHMETIC MODELS

By construction,  $j_5$  induces an isomorphism of Riemann surfaces  $j_{5,\zeta} : X_\zeta(5) \simeq \mathbf{CP}^1$  for each primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ . By Lemma 3.1, this descends to an algebraic isomorphism  $j_{5,\mu} : X_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}} \simeq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$ . Since  $X_\mu(5)$  is a proper smooth  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ -scheme with geometrically connected fibers of genus 0, the isomorphism  $j_{5,\mu}$  must uniquely extend to an isomorphism  $X_\mu(5) \simeq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]}^1$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$  that we also denote  $j_{5,\mu}$ . To deduce arithmetic properties of  $j_5$  over  $\mathbf{Z}$ , it is essential to remove the denominators at 5 in this latter isomorphism. For this purpose, we will now work over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  by using Theorem 2.2 with  $N = 5$ .

Let  $X$  denote the  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ -scheme  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$ , and let  $j_X \in \mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)(X)$  be the rational function obtained from  $j_{5,\mu}$  by extension of scalars (or by descent of any  $j_{5,\zeta}$  over  $\mathbf{C}$ ). All fibers of  $X$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  are geometrically connected (by Stein factorization), as the  $\mathbf{C}$ -fiber is connected.

The  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ -scheme  $X$  is smooth (and hence regular) near the cusps, so the ideal sheaf of the section  $\infty$  is invertible, and hence the inverse sheaf  $\mathcal{O}(\infty)$  makes sense on  $X$ . The key to integrality results for  $j_5$  is:

**Lemma 5.1.** *The rational function  $j_X$  on the  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ -scheme  $X$  is a regular function on  $X - \{\infty\}$ , and  $\{j_X, 1\}$  is a pair of generating sections of the line bundle  $\mathcal{O}(\infty)$  on  $X$ .*

*Proof.* The  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  at  $\infty$  has integral coefficients and a simple pole with leading coefficient 1, so the rational function  $j_X$  on  $X$  induces a local generator of  $\mathcal{O}(\infty)$  along  $\infty \in X(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5])$ . It therefore remains to show that  $j_X$  is a regular function on  $X - \{\infty\}$ . Since  $X - \{\infty\}$  is a connected normal noetherian scheme, it suffices to check that  $j_X$  is defined in codimension  $\leq 1$  on  $X - \{\infty\}$ . The situation along the generic fiber is clear via the analytic theory (see (2.3)), and so we only need to study  $j_X$  at the generic points of the geometrically connected fiber  $X_s$  of  $X$  over each closed point  $s = \mathfrak{m} \in \text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ . Note that if  $s$  is not the unique point of residue characteristic 5, then the connected  $X_s$  is smooth and hence irreducible. Since  $\infty \in X(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5])$  is supported in the smooth locus of  $X$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ , the section  $\infty_s \in X_s(\mathbf{F}_5)$  in the unique fiber  $X_s$  of characteristic 5 lies in a unique irreducible component of  $X_s$ .

Fix a choice of closed point  $s \in \text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ . The local ring  $\mathcal{O}_{X,\eta}$  at each generic point  $\eta$  of  $X_s$  is a discrete valuation ring with uniformizer given by a local parameter in  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]_{\mathfrak{m}}$ . Thus, the integral structure of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  at  $\infty$  ensures that for every closed point  $s$  of  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ ,  $j_X$  is a local unit at the generic point of the unique irreducible component of  $X_s$  that contains  $\infty_s$ . It remains to work near the generic points  $\eta$  of the unique fiber in characteristic 5 such that  $\overline{\{\eta\}}$  does not meet  $\infty$ . It suffices to find a section  $\sigma_\eta \in X(\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5])$  supported in the smooth locus and passing through the chosen mod-5 component  $\overline{\{\eta\}}$  such that  $j_X$  lies in the coordinate ring of the formal completion of  $X$  along  $\sigma_\eta$ .

Finiteness of  $X$  over the usual  $j$ -line implies that  $\overline{\{\eta\}}$  must contain some cusp, so it suffices to check that the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  at each cusp has coefficients in  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ . This is a purely analytic problem on  $X_\zeta(5)$  for any primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in \mathbf{C}$ , and it suffices to consider a single choice of  $\zeta$ . We choose  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  for  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  in a chosen connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ , as this makes the action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  lift (via  $\pi_\zeta$ ) to the standard action on  $\mathfrak{H}$  via linear fractional transformations. The action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  is transitive on the set of cusps, so it suffices to prove that the coefficients of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5 \circ \gamma$  at  $\infty$  lies in  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta]$  for all  $\gamma \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ . By (4.7) and (4.8), this desired integrality follows immediately from the product formula (4.6) and the transformation law (4.5) for the standard action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ .  $\blacksquare$

Let  $(\mathcal{O}(1); s_0, s_1)$  be the universal line bundle on  $\mathbf{P}^1$  equipped with an ordered pair of generating sections  $s_0$  and  $s_1$ . By Lemma 5.1 and the universal property of the projective line, there is a unique morphism

$$J_5 : X(5)^{\text{can}} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}^1$$

over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  such that there is an isomorphism  $J_5^*(\mathcal{O}(1)) \simeq \mathcal{O}(\infty)$  carrying  $J_5^*(s_0)$  to  $j_X$  and  $J_5^*(s_1)$  to 1. In particular,  $J_5^{-1}([1 : 0]) = \infty$  as subschemes of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$ .

**Theorem 5.2.** *The map  $J_5$  is an isomorphism over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][1/5]$ , and on the unique characteristic-5 fiber it contracts all irreducible components except for the unique fibral irreducible component  $C_\infty$  containing  $\infty$ . The*

reduced irreducible component  $C_\infty$  contains the cusp 0 as its only other cusp and it is mapped isomorphically onto  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$  under  $J_5$ . The other 5 irreducible components of the mod- $(1 - \zeta_5)$  fiber of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  map onto a common point in  $\mathbf{F}_5^\times \in \mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{F}_5)$ .

*Remark 5.3.* One immediate consequence of this theorem is the numerical fact that the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_{5,\zeta}$  at each cusp other than  $\infty_\zeta$  and  $0_\zeta$  has all higher-degree coefficients divisible by  $1 - \zeta_5$ . Another immediate consequence is that both the zero and polar schemes of  $J_5$  lie entirely in the cuspidal subscheme. This second consequence generalizes (2.3).

*Proof.* By passing to the complex-analytic fiber relative to an embedding  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5] \rightarrow \mathbf{C}$  defined by some primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in \mathbf{C}$ , the map  $J_5$  induces the map  $j_{5,\zeta} : X_\zeta(5) \simeq \mathbf{CP}^1$ . Thus, the analytic isomorphism property for  $j_{5,\zeta}$  over  $\mathbf{C}$  implies that  $J_5$  is an algebraic isomorphism on  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)$ -fibers, and so by properness the map  $J_5$  is surjective. If we work over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][1/5]$ , then  $J_5$  is therefore a surjective birational map between proper smooth curves over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][1/5]$ , and these curves have (geometrically) connected fibers. Thus, after inverting 5 we see that the proper  $J_5$  must become quasi-finite and hence finite, so (by normality) it is an isomorphism over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][1/5]$ .

There is a unique supersingular  $j$ -value in characteristic 5, so [10, 13.2.2] implies that the mod- $(1 - \zeta_5)$  fiber  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  of  $X = X(5)^{\text{can}}$  is reduced and is scheme-theoretically constructed by gluing some  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$ 's transversally at a single  $\mathbf{F}_5$ -point. It follows from [10, 13.8.4] that there are exactly  $6 = \#\mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{F}_5)$  irreducible components in  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  and that these are in natural bijection with the lines in  $(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})^2$  in such a way that the action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  is compatible with the natural transitive action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on the set of such lines. In particular, this action on  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  is transitive on the set of irreducible components of  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$ , so there are  $12/6 = 2$  cusps on each component. The geometric points  $(E, \iota)$  of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  satisfying  $\iota(1, 0) = 0$  define one of these components. This component contains the cusps  $\infty$  and 0, and so it is  $C_\infty$ .

Let us show that the map  $J_5 : C_\infty \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$  between smooth proper connected curves is an isomorphism when  $C_\infty$  is given its reduced structure. Since  $J_5^{-1}([1 : 0]) = \infty$  with ramification degree  $e_{\infty|[1:0]} = 1$  (due to the structure of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  at  $\infty$ ), we conclude that the map  $C_\infty \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$  between integral proper curves is birational with generic degree 1. Thus, it is an isomorphism.

Let  $C$  be an irreducible component of  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  distinct from  $C_\infty$ . The map  $J_5 : C \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$  is not surjective (it cannot hit  $[1 : 0]$ ), so  $J_5(C)$  is a single closed point in  $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$ . Since all  $C$ 's pass through a common  $\mathbf{F}_5$ -point in  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  (namely, a supersingular point), it follows that the  $J_5(C)$ 's for  $C \neq C_\infty$  are equal to a common point in  $\mathbf{A}^1(\mathbf{F}_5)$ . It remains to show that  $J_5(C) \neq 0$  for  $C \neq C_\infty$ .

Let  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  with  $c = \pm 2$ , so  $[\gamma](\infty) = 0$  by definition. Hence,  $[\gamma]$  must preserve  $C_\infty$ .

It follows that via the contraction map  $J_5$ , the involution  $[\gamma]$  of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  is intertwined with an involution of  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}^1$  that switches  $[1 : 0]$  and  $[0 : 1]$ . Such an involution must be  $t \mapsto u/t$  for  $u \in \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]^\times$ . That is,  $J_5 \circ [\gamma] = u/J_5$ . It follows that  $J_5^{-1}([0 : 1]) = [\gamma](J_5^{-1}([1 : 0])) = \{0\}$ . This is disjoint from all  $C \neq C_\infty$ , so  $J_5(C) \neq 0$  for  $C \neq C_\infty$ . ■

*Remark 5.4.* For irreducible components  $C$  of  $X_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  distinct from  $C_\infty$ , the common point  $J_5(C) \in \mathbf{F}_5^\times$  is equal to  $-2$ . To verify this fact (which we will not use), it suffices to compute  $j_{5,\zeta}$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  at any cusp other than  $0_\zeta$  and  $\infty_\zeta$  (for a single choice of  $\zeta$ ). In Table B.1 we list of values of  $j_{5,\zeta}$  at the cusps when using  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  and working with  $\tau$  in the connected component of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  that contains  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ . By inspection of the table we see that these values have reduction  $-2$  in  $\mathbf{F}_5$  except at the cusps  $0_\zeta$  and  $\infty_\zeta$ .

We have noted in Remark 5.3 that the zero and polar schemes for  $J_5$  are equal to the cuspidal sections 0 and  $\infty$  respectively. These two sections are switched by the involution  $w$  of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  that is induced by  $\pm \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ , and a key fact is that  $J_5$  intertwines  $w$  with an involution of  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}^1$ :

**Corollary 5.5.** *The identity  $J_5 \circ w = -1/J_5$  holds.*

*Proof.* By Theorem 5.2 and Remark 5.3,  $J_5 \circ w = u/J_5$  for some  $u \in \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]^\times$ . Just as  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  and  $J_5$  descend to  $X_\mu(5)$  and  $j_{5,\mu}$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ , it is clear that the action on  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  by diagonal matrices in  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  also descends over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ . In particular,  $w$  descends, and so  $u \in \mathbf{Q}$ . Thus,  $u = \pm 1$ . To compute  $u$ , we use analysis as follows. For the lift  $\tilde{\gamma} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 5 & 13 \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  of  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ , we must have  $j_5 \circ \tilde{\gamma} = u/j_5$ . However, via (4.6) and (4.7), it is a simple analytic calculation with the transformation law (4.5) to check that  $j_5 \circ \tilde{\gamma}$  has  $q$ -expansion with initial term  $-q_\tau^{1/5}$ . Thus,  $u = -1$ .  $\blacksquare$

We now obtain a geometric proof of [1, Thm. 6.2]:

**Corollary 5.6.** *If  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  is quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , then  $F(\tau)$  is an algebraic integral unit; equivalently,  $j_5(\tau)$  is an algebraic integral unit.*

*Proof.* Fix a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in \mathbf{C}$ , and use this to consider  $\mathbf{C}$  as a  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ -algebra. The point  $\tau$  maps to a point  $x_\tau = \pi_\zeta(\tau) \in X_\zeta(5) = X(5)^{\text{can}}(\mathbf{C})$ , and  $j_5(\tau) = J_5(x_\tau)$ . Since  $\tau$  is imaginary quadratic,  $\mathbf{C}^\times/q_\tau^\mathbf{Z}$  is a CM elliptic curve. Thus,  $x_\tau$  must be an algebraic point. Let  $K \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  be a number field containing  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)$  such that  $x_\tau$  is a  $K$ -point of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$ , and hence  $J_5(x_\tau) \in \mathbf{P}^1(K) \subseteq \mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{C})$ . We wish to investigate the properties of  $J_5(x_\tau)$ .

The ring of integers  $\mathcal{O}_K$  of  $K$  is Dedekind, so we may use the valuative criterion for properness to uniquely extend  $x_\tau$  to a map  $\tilde{x}_\tau : \text{Spec } \mathcal{O}_K \rightarrow X(5)^{\text{can}}$ . We want to prove that  $J_5(\tilde{x}_\tau) \in \mathbf{P}^1(\mathcal{O}_K)$  is disjoint from the sections  $[0 : 1]$  and  $[1 : 0]$  in  $\mathbf{P}^1$ . By construction  $J_5^{-1}([1 : 0]) = \{\infty\}$ . By Corollary 5.5,  $J_5^{-1}([0 : 1]) = \{0\}$ . Thus, to prove that  $j_5(\tau)$  is an algebraic integral unit it suffices to prove that (the image of)  $\tilde{x}_\tau$  is disjoint from the cuspidal subscheme. This disjointness is clear, since specialization into a cusp forces multiplicative reduction, yet CM elliptic curves have potentially good reduction at all places.  $\blacksquare$

We would like to determine the field  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau, j_5(\tau)) \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  for any imaginary quadratic  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Since  $\mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(5)) = \mathbf{Q}(j_{5,\mu})$  and  $j_{5,\mu} = j_{5,\zeta} \circ \pi_\zeta$  for  $\zeta = e^{\pm 2\pi i/5}$ , Theorem 3.2 and Corollary 3.3 yield:

**Corollary 5.7.** *Let  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  be quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Let  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$ , and let  $\rho_\tau : \mathbf{A}_K^\times \rightarrow \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_\mathbf{Q})$  be the canonical representation in (3.2). Let  $\mathcal{O}_\tau \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  be the CM-order of  $\mathbf{C}^\times/q_\tau^\mathbf{Z}$ , and let*

$$V = \mathbf{Q}^\times \cdot \left\{ g = (g_\infty, g^\infty) \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{R}) \times \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_\mathbf{Q}^\infty) \mid \det g_\infty > 0, g^\infty \in \text{GL}_2(\widehat{\mathbf{Z}}), g^\infty \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix} \pmod{5} \right\}.$$

*The extension  $K(j_5(\tau))/K$  is the abelian extension of  $K$  with associated open subgroup*

$$(5.1) \quad (K^\times \cdot \{s \in \mathbf{A}_K^\times \mid \rho_\tau(s) \in V\})/K^\times \subseteq \mathbf{A}_K^\times/K^\times.$$

*In particular,  $K(j_5(\tau))/K$  is unramified away from  $5[\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$ .*

*If  $\tau$  is 5-integral then  $K(j_5(\tau))$  is contained in the ray class field of conductor  $5[\mathcal{O}_K : \mathcal{O}_\tau]$  for  $K$ , and  $K(j_5(\tau))$  is equal to this ray class field if moreover  $\mathcal{O}_\tau = \mathcal{O}_K$  and  $\tau$  is a 5-unit.*

## 6. MODULAR EQUATIONS

In this section we use the integral models from §2 and our work in §5 to show that for any positive integer  $n$  relatively prime to 5,  $j_5(\tau)$  and  $j_5(n\tau)$  satisfy a ‘‘modular equation’’  $F_n(j_5(\tau), j_5(n\tau)) = 0$  for a suitable primitive  $F_n \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  that is absolutely irreducible over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . We then establish a Kronecker congruence for such  $F_n$ 's and we analyze the case  $n = 5$ . This is motivated by the algebro-geometric treatment of the classical modular polynomials, except that there are two complications:  $X_\zeta(5)$  has more than one cusp, and we need to use *two* moduli schemes to get a result over  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

The modular polynomials  $F_n$  are going to be constructed by geometric methods, as this provides the clearest way to analyze the properties of  $F_n$  (such as absolute irreducibility over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and congruences modulo  $p$ ). This construction rests on the interaction of  $\Gamma_\mu(N)$ -structures and  $\Gamma_0(n)$ -structures for  $N = 5$  and  $\text{gcd}(n, N) = 1$ , so let us begin by defining a moduli functor that mixes both kinds of structures. For  $N \geq 3$ ,

consider the enhanced moduli functor  $\mathcal{M}$  that classifies triples  $(E, \iota, C)$  where  $E$  is an elliptic curve,  $\iota$  is a  $\Gamma_\mu(N)$ -structure, and  $C \hookrightarrow E$  is a  $\Gamma_0(n)$ -structure in the sense of [10, §3.4] (so if  $n$  is a unit on the base then  $C$  is an order- $n$  finite étale subgroup of  $E$  such that  $C$  is cyclic on geometric fibers). The  $\Gamma_0(n)$ -moduli problem on elliptic curves is relatively representable and finite flat [10, §4.5, 6.6.1]; applying this to the universal object over  $Y_\mu(N)$  yields the existence of a fine moduli scheme  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  for  $\mathcal{M}$  on the category of  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -schemes, with a forgetful map

$$\pi_n : Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow Y(\Gamma_\mu(N)) = Y_\mu(N)$$

that is finite and flat. By [10, 6.6.1],  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  is an affine curve over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/N]$  and it is regular.

The finite flat  $j$ -maps to  $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/N]}^1$  allow us to define compactifications  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  and  $X_\mu(N)$  by normalizing  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/N]}^1$  in the function fields of the affine normal modular curves  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  and  $Y_\mu(N)$  (this recovers the same  $X_\mu(N)$  that we defined in §2 via moduli-theoretic methods). Thus, we get a natural finite map

$$\bar{\pi}_n : X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow X_\mu(N)$$

between normal proper  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -curves, and over the open subscheme  $Y_\mu(N) \subseteq X_\mu(N)$  this recovers  $\pi_n$ . Since  $\gcd(n, N) = 1$ , there is a natural automorphism  $w_n$  on  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  whose action on moduli is

$$w_n : (E, \iota, C) \mapsto (E/C, \iota', E[n]/C)$$

with  $\iota'$  defined as the composite isomorphism

$$\iota' : \mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z} \xrightarrow{n^{-1} \times 1} \mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z} \xrightarrow{\iota} E[N] \simeq (E/C)[N],$$

where the intervention of  $n^{-1}$  in the first step ensures that  $\iota'$  is a symplectic isomorphism. Observe that we have a commutative diagram

$$(6.1) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) & \xrightarrow{w_n^2} & Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) \\ \pi_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_n \\ Y_\mu(N) & \xrightarrow{[\delta_n]} & Y_\mu(N) \end{array}$$

with

$$(6.2) \quad \delta_n = \begin{pmatrix} n & 0 \\ 0 & n^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}).$$

In terms of moduli, the finite flat covering  $\pi'_n = \pi_n \circ w_n$  sends  $(E, \iota, C)$  to  $(E/C, \iota')$ , where  $\iota'$  is defined as above. Since the cuspidal locus is quasi-finite over the base  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ , the involution  $w_n$  of the normal  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -curve  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  uniquely extends to an involution  $\bar{w}_n$  of the normal proper  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -curve  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$ . Thus, we may define the finite map  $\bar{\pi}'_n = \bar{\pi}_n \circ \bar{w}_n$  extending  $\pi'_n$ . The compatibility (6.1) extends to compactified modular curves in the evident manner. The maps  $\bar{\pi}_n$  and  $\bar{\pi}'_n$  are analogues of the classical degeneracy maps for  $N = 1$ .

Consider the proper morphism

$$\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n : X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow X_\mu(N) \times_{\mathbf{Z}[1/N]} X_\mu(N).$$

This map is quasi-finite, since there are at most finitely many cyclic  $n$ -isogenies between a pair of elliptic curves over an algebraically closed field, and so it is finite. It is generically injective (since a generic pair of elliptic curves admit at most one cyclic isogeny of a given degree, up to sign), and hence it is generically a closed immersion because the irreducible  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  has generic characteristic zero. Thus, the regular  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  maps birationally onto its image under  $\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n$ , but this image generally has singularities.

**Definition 6.1.** The *Kroneckerian model*  $Z_{N,n}$  of  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  is the scheme-theoretic image of the finite map  $\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n$ .

Since  $X_\mu(N)$  has a moduli-theoretic interpretation for  $N \geq 3$ , the rigidity of generalized elliptic curves (i.e., the triviality of the deformation theory of morphisms) ensures that the map  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow Z_{N,n}$  is formally unramified, and so  $Z_{N,n}$  has much milder singularities than in the classical case  $N = 1$ .

The Krockerman model  $Z_{N,n}$  is a proper flat  $\mathbf{Z}[1/N]$ -scheme that is reduced. The map  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}} \rightarrow Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}}$  between integral proper  $\mathbf{Q}$ -curves expresses  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}}$  as the normalization of  $Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}}$ . In particular,  $Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}}$  is geometrically irreducible, and hence is geometrically connected. The fibers of the proper flat map  $Z_{N,n} \rightarrow \text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/N]$  are therefore geometrically connected curves (and are reducible in characteristics dividing  $n$ ). Motivated by the classical case  $N = 1$ , we will construct the modular polynomials  $F_n$  for  $j_5$  by studying  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}}$  as an irreducible curve on the surface

$$X_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}} \times X_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}} = \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1.$$

**Lemma 6.2.** *For  $N \geq 3$  and  $\gcd(N, n) = 1$ , the following properties hold.*

- (1) *The projections  $Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}} \rightrightarrows X_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  are finite with generic degree  $[\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)] = n \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$ .*
- (2) *Let  $\sigma$  be the involution of  $X_\mu(N) \times X_\mu(N)$  that switches the factors. Using (6.2), the self-map  $\sigma \circ (1 \times [\delta_{n-1}])$  on  $X_\mu(N) \times X_\mu(N)$  restricts to the identity on  $Z_{N,n}$ . In particular, if  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod N$  then  $\sigma$  acts as the identity on  $Z_{N,n}$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}} \rightarrow Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}}$  is the normalization, and so is a finite birational isomorphism, (1) follows from the fact that  $\bar{\pi}_n$  and  $\bar{\pi}'_n = \bar{\pi}_n \circ \bar{w}_n$  have common degree equal to the degree of the  $\Gamma_0(n)$ -moduli problem:  $[\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]$ .

To establish (2), we first note that  $Z_{N,n}$  is equal to the scheme-theoretic image of  $(\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n) \circ \phi$  for any automorphism  $\phi$  of  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$ . Taking  $\phi = \bar{w}_n$ , we see that  $Z_{N,n}$  is the scheme-theoretic image of

$$(\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n) \circ \bar{w}_n = \bar{\pi}'_n \times (\bar{\pi}_n \circ \bar{w}_n^2) = \bar{\pi}'_n \times ([\delta_n] \circ \bar{\pi}_n) = (1 \times [\delta_n]) \circ (\bar{\pi}'_n \times \bar{\pi}_n).$$

Thus, if  $\sigma$  denotes the involution of  $X_\mu(N) \times X_\mu(N)$  that switches the factors, then  $\sigma \circ (1 \times [\delta_{n-1}])$  is the identity on  $Z_{N,n}$ . ■

Now specialize to the case  $N = 5$ . By Theorem 5.2,  $j_{5,\mu}$  defines an isomorphism  $X_\mu(5) \simeq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]}^1$  carrying  $\infty$  to  $[1 : 0]$ . Thus, for any  $n$  relatively prime to 5 we may consider the Kroneckerian model  $Z_{5,n}$  as a reduced closed subscheme in  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]}^1$  that is proper and flat over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$  with geometrically connected fibers of dimension 1, and with geometrically integral generic fiber over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Let  $\mathcal{Z}_n$  be the closure of  $Z_{5,n}$  in  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}}^1$ , so this is a proper flat curve over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}$ . In particular, it must be the closure of its irreducible generic fiber  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}} \subseteq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$ . By Lemma 6.2(1), the projections

$$Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}} \rightrightarrows \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$$

are finite with generic degree equal to  $\deg \pi_n$ . Thus,  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}} \subseteq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$  is the zero-scheme of an irreducible bihomogeneous absolutely irreducible polynomial  $\tilde{F}_n(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1)$  with degree  $\deg \pi_n$  in both the  $X$ 's and the  $Y$ 's. Moreover, both  $X_0$  and  $Y_0$  must arise in  $\tilde{F}_n$  (since  $Z_{N,n,\mathbf{Q}}$  meets  $Y_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}} \times Y_\mu(N)_{\mathbf{Q}}$ ) and so by irreducibility it follows that the dehomogenization  $\tilde{F}_n(X, 1; Y, 1)$  has degree  $\deg \pi_n$  in each of  $X$  and  $Y$ .

Let  $F_n(X, Y)$  be a primitive polynomial over  $\mathbf{Z}$  that is a scalar multiple of  $\tilde{F}_n(X, 1; Y, 1)$  (this determines  $F_n$  up to sign), so  $F_n \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  is geometrically irreducible over  $\mathbf{Q}$  with degree  $\deg \pi_n$  in each of  $X$  and  $Y$ . We claim that the *modular equation*

$$F_n(j_5(\tau), j_5(n\tau)) = 0$$

holds. In the complex-analytic theory, the map  $\pi'_n$  corresponds to  $\tau \mapsto n\tau$ , and hence the functions  $j_{5,\mu} \circ \bar{\pi}_n$  and  $j_{5,\mu} \circ \bar{\pi}'_n$  on  $X(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  correspond to the functions  $j_5(\tau)$  and  $j_5(n\tau)$  on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Thus, the modular equation follows from the definition of  $F_n$ . To remove the sign ambiguity in the definition of  $F_n$ , we first must prove:

**Theorem 6.3.** *There are unique monomial terms  $X^{r_n} Y^{\deg \pi_n}$  and  $Y^{s_n} X^{\deg \pi_n}$  in  $F_n$  with respective  $Y$ -degree and  $X$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$ , and both occur in  $F_n$  with coefficient in  $\mathbf{Z}^\times = \{\pm 1\}$ .*

*Proof.* We may (and do) work over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ , and we may work with the  $\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}$ -moduli functor instead of the  $\Gamma_\mu(5)$ -moduli functor. Consider the finite flat maps

$$\bar{\pi}_n, \bar{\pi}'_n : X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n)) \rightrightarrows X(5)^{\text{can}}$$

over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$  and the automorphism  $\bar{w}_n$  of  $X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n))$ ; these are defined just as we define the maps  $\pi_n$ ,  $w_n$ , and  $\pi'_n$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ .

The key fact is that  $\bar{w}_n$  preserves  $\bar{\pi}_n^{-1}(\{0, \infty\})$ . To verify this property, we first note that the cuspidal subscheme  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  is a disjoint union of copies of  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ , and  $\bar{\pi}_n^{-1}(X(5)^{\text{can}})$  is the cuspidal subscheme of  $X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n))$ ; also,  $\bar{w}_n$  restricts to an automorphism of the cuspidal subscheme. Since  $\bar{\pi}_n$  is a finite flat surjection, it is therefore enough to verify that  $\bar{w}_n$  preserves  $\bar{\pi}_n^{-1}(\{0, \infty\})$  on fibers over a single point of  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ . We will work at the unique point of characteristic 5.

As we noted in the proof of Theorem 5.2, the fiber  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  consists of 6 copies of  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_5}^1$  glued transversally at a unique (supersingular)  $\mathbf{F}_5$ -point, and there are exactly 2 cusps on each of these irreducible components, with one of the irreducible components  $C_\infty$  containing  $\infty$  and 0 as its cusps. This component  $C_\infty$  is characterized by the property that its geometric points  $(E, \iota)$  have  $\iota(1, 0) = 0$ .

We similarly find (using the methods as in the proof of [10, 13.7.6]) that  $X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  is a reduced curve with 6 irreducible components that are glued at supersingular points, and that the finite flat projection

$$\bar{\pi}_n : X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow X(5)^{\text{can}}$$

sets up a bijection between these 6 irreducible components and the 6 irreducible components of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$ . Let  $C'_\infty$  be the irreducible component of  $X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{F}_5}$  whose non-cuspidal geometric points  $(E, \iota, C)$  have  $\iota(1, 0) = 0$ , so  $C'_\infty = \bar{\pi}_n^{-1}(C_\infty)$ . An inspection of the definition of  $w_n$  shows that  $\bar{w}_n$  preserves the vanishing property for the 5-torsion point  $\iota(1, 0)$ , so  $\bar{w}_n$  carries  $C'_\infty$  to itself. Thus,  $\bar{w}_n$  preserves  $\bar{\pi}_n^{-1}(\{0, \infty\})$  in characteristic 5, and hence over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ .

By Theorem 5.2,  $j_{5, \zeta_5}$  identifies  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}^1$  with the contraction of  $X(5)^{\text{can}}$  along the mod- $(1 - \zeta_5)$  components distinct from  $C_\infty$ . Let  $\tilde{X}$  denote the normal proper flat  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]$ -curve obtained by contracting  $X(\Gamma(5)^{\text{can}}, \Gamma_0(n))$  along the mod- $(1 - \zeta_5)$  components distinct from  $C'_\infty$  (see [3, 6.7/3] for the existence of such a contraction, using some connected components of the cuspidal divisor to construct the divisor in the hypothesis in [3, 6.7/3]). Since the automorphism  $\bar{w}_n$  preserves  $C'_\infty$ , it uniquely factors through the contraction to define an automorphism  $\tilde{w}_n$  of  $\tilde{X}$ . Likewise,  $\bar{\pi}_n$  uniquely factors through the contraction to define a proper surjective map  $\tilde{\pi}_n : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5]}^1$  that must be quasi-finite, and hence finite, as well as flat (since it is a finite map from a normal surface to a regular surface; see [16, 23.1]). We define  $\tilde{\pi}'_n = \tilde{\pi}_n \circ \tilde{w}_n$ , and let  $U$  be the common preimage of  $\mathbf{G}_m = \mathbf{P}^1 - \{[0 : 1], [1 : 0]\}$  under  $\tilde{\pi}_n$  and  $\tilde{\pi}'_n$ .

Using the structure map  $\tilde{\pi}_n$ , all regular functions on  $U$  are integral over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][j_5, 1/j_5]$ . Using the structure map  $\tilde{\pi}'_n$ , all regular functions on  $U$  are integral over  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][j_5(n\tau), 1/j_5(n\tau)]$ , where we adopt the usual abuse of notation by writing  $j_5(n\tau)$  to denote the function  $\tau \mapsto j_5(n\tau)$ . We conclude that the irreducible minimal monic polynomial for the function  $j_5(\tau)$  over the field  $\mathbf{Q}(j_5(n\tau))$  has coefficients in  $\mathbf{Z}[\zeta_5][j_5(n\tau), 1/j_5(n\tau)]$ , and similarly with the roles of the functions  $j_5(\tau)$  and  $j_5(n\tau)$  reversed. These minimal polynomials are exactly the  $\mathbf{Q}(Y)^\times$ - and  $\mathbf{Q}(X)^\times$ -multiples of  $F_n(X, Y)$  that are respectively monic in  $X$  and monic in  $Y$ , so it follows that the irreducible  $F_n(X, Y) \in (\mathbf{Z}[X])[Y]$  has its dominant  $Y$ -term (with  $Y$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$ ) with a coefficient that is a unit in  $\mathbf{Z}[X, 1/X]$ . That is, there is a unique monomial term  $X^{r_n} Y^{\deg \pi_n}$  in  $F_n$  and its  $\mathbf{Z}$ -coefficient is a unit; by the same argument, there is a unique monomial term  $Y^{s_n} X^{\deg \pi_n}$  in  $F_n$  with  $X$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$  and its  $\mathbf{Z}$ -coefficient is a unit.  $\blacksquare$

The two unit coefficients in Theorem 6.3 need not be equal. We now make an arbitrary choice (that is meaningful because of Theorem 6.3):



**Definition 6.4.** The primitive polynomial  $F_n \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  is the unique one that is absolutely irreducible over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , satisfies  $F_n(j_5(\tau), j_5(n\tau)) = 0$ , and has its unique monomial  $X^{r_n} Y^{\deg \pi_n}$  with maximal  $Y$ -degree occur with coefficient equal to 1.

An important symmetry property of  $F_n$  is:

**Theorem 6.5.** *Let  $n > 1$  be an integer. If  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  then  $F_n(Y, X) = F_n(X, Y)$ . If  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  then  $X^{\deg \pi_n} F_n(Y, -1/X) = \varepsilon_n F_n(X, Y)$  with  $\varepsilon_n = \pm 1$ , where  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  if and only if one of the following mutually exclusive conditions holds:*

- (1)  $n = 2m^2$  with  $m \geq 1$  and the odd part  $m_{\text{odd}}$  satisfying  $m_{\text{odd}} \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  when  $m$  is odd,  $m_{\text{odd}} \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  when  $m$  is even and not a power of 2, and  $m = 4^a$  with  $a \geq 1$  when  $m > 1$  and  $m$  is a power of 2,
- (2)  $n = 4p^a$  with  $a \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  and an odd prime  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$ ,
- (3)  $n = 4^{2b+1} p^a m^2$  with odd  $m \geq 1$  and an odd prime  $p \nmid m$  such that  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ ,  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$ , and  $m > 1$  or  $b > 0$ .

*Remark 6.6.* The least  $n > 2$  such that  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  and  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  is  $n = 32$ ; the second-smallest such  $n$  is  $n = 72$ . Note that the sign  $\varepsilon_n$  is invariant under replacing  $F_n$  with  $-F_n$ , and so it is independent of our arbitrary choice of sign-convention in the definition of  $F_n$ .

*Proof.* Since  $[\delta_n]$  as in (6.1) acts on  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1 = X_{\mu}(5)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  via the identity for  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  and via  $t \mapsto -1/t$  for  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  (by Corollary 5.5), Lemma 6.2(2) implies that the zero schemes of  $F_n(Y, X)$  and  $F_n(X, Y)$  (say over  $\mathbf{Q}$ ) coincide for  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , and the zero schemes of  $X^{\deg \pi_n} F_n(Y, -1/X)$  and  $F_n(X, Y)$  (say over  $\mathbf{Q}$ ) coincide for  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$ . Thus, this gives the result up to a  $\mathbf{Q}^{\times}$ -multiple. By primitivity, there is in fact only an ambiguity of sign. We cannot have  $F_n(X, Y) = -F_n(Y, X)$ , as then  $F_n(X, X) = 0$  and this contradicts the fact that the irreducible  $F_n(X, Y)$  cannot be divisible by  $X - Y$  ( $F_n$  has degree  $\deg \pi_n$  in each variable, and  $\deg \pi_n > 1$  since  $n > 1$ ).

It remains to compute the sign  $\varepsilon_n$  such that  $X^{\deg \pi_n} F_n(Y, -1/X) = \varepsilon_n F_n(X, Y)$  for  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$ . Recall that we defined  $F_n$  by the property that the unique monomial in  $F_n$  with  $Y$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$  has coefficient of 1. That is,  $F_n$  modulo multiplication by  $X^{\mathbf{Z}}$  is equivalent to a monic polynomial in  $Y$  in  $\mathbf{Z}[X, 1/X][Y]$ , and this monic polynomial agrees with  $\varepsilon_n F_n(Y, -1/X)$  up to multiplication by  $X^{\mathbf{Z}}$ . The unique monomial-term in  $F_n(X, Y)$  with  $X$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$  has the form  $u_n Y^{s_n} X^{\deg \pi_n}$  for some  $u_n \in \{\pm 1\}$ , so  $F_n(Y, -1/X)$  has its top-degree  $Y$ -term equal to  $(-1)^{s_n} u_n Y^{\deg \pi_n}$  modulo  $X^{\mathbf{Z}}$ . Thus,  $\varepsilon_n = (-1)^{s_n} u_n$ . Since  $j_5(\tau) = q_{\tau}^{-1/5} + \dots$ , if we write  $F_n(j_5, Y) \bmod^{\times} j_5^{\mathbf{Z}}$  as a  $Y$ -monic element in  $\mathbf{Z}[j_5, Y] \subseteq \mathbf{Z}((q_{\tau}^{1/5}))[[Y]]$  then the unique monomial  $(q_{\tau}^{-1/5})^{\alpha_n} Y^{\beta_n}$  with the highest  $q$ -pole has  $Y$ -degree  $s_n$  and coefficient  $u_n = (-1)^{s_n} \varepsilon_n$  (note that generally  $\alpha_n \neq \deg \pi_n$  because we have multiplied  $F(j_5, Y)$  by a power of  $j_5$  to make it monic in  $Y$ ). We shall use this viewpoint to compute  $\varepsilon_n$  by studying  $F_n(j_5, Y)$  over  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)((q_{\tau}^{1/5}))$ .

Let  $\Delta'_n = \Gamma(5) \begin{pmatrix} n & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \Gamma(5)$ , so  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n$  has size  $\deg \pi_n = n \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$ . Since  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$ , modulo multiplication by  $j_5^{\mathbf{Z}}$  we have

$$(6.3) \quad F_n(j_5, Y) \equiv \prod_{\alpha \in \Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n} (Y - j_5 \circ \alpha) \bmod^{\times} j_5^{\mathbf{Z}}$$

(where we are considering multiplicative congruence). To analyze  $j_5 \circ \alpha$ , we need to find a convenient set of coset representatives for  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n$ . To compute such a set, recall (as in [19, Prop. 3.36] in much greater generality) that a set of representatives for  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \{\alpha \in \text{End}_{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathbf{Z}^2) \mid \det \alpha = n\}$  is

$$(6.4) \quad \left\{ \sigma_a \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a & 5b \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \mid ad = n, 0 \leq b < d, a > 0 \right\},$$

where  $\sigma_a \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  depends only on  $a \bmod 5$  and is a lift of  $\begin{pmatrix} a^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ . For example, for definitiveness we can take

$$(6.5) \quad \sigma_{\pm 1} = \pm \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_{\pm 2} = \pm \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 5 & 13 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We are interested in only the subset  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n$ , and obviously the representatives for such left-cosets must be primitive matrices and so a set of representatives for  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n$  is contained in

$$(6.6) \quad \left\{ \sigma_a \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a & 5b \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \mid ad = n, 0 \leq b < d, a > 0, \gcd(a, b, d) = 1 \right\};$$

an elementary count (via decomposition along the prime factorization of  $n$ ) shows that the set (6.6) has size  $n \cdot \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$ , and so (6.6) is a set of representatives for  $\Gamma(5) \backslash \Delta'_n$ . Note that the preceding calculations are valid for any  $n$  relatively prime to 5 without requiring  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  (and so we may and will use the above conclusions in our later analysis of the size of the coefficients of  $F_n$  for *any* large  $n$ ).

For  $\alpha_{a,b,d} = \sigma_a \begin{pmatrix} a & 5b \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix}$  in the set (6.4), we have

$$j_5 \circ \alpha_{a,b,d} = (j_5 \circ \sigma_a)((a\tau + 5b)/d)$$

with  $j_5 \circ \sigma_a$  only depending on  $\pm a \bmod 5$ . Since  $a/d > 0$  and

$$-j_5 \circ \sigma_{\pm 1} = -q_\tau^{-1/5} + \dots, \quad -j_5 \circ \sigma_{\pm 2} = q_\tau^{1/5} + \dots,$$

we see that  $-j_5 \circ \alpha_{a,b,d}$  has a pole if and only if  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ . Thus, there is a unique set of  $\alpha_{a,b,d}$ 's in (6.6) such that the product of the corresponding  $-j_5 \circ \alpha_{a,b,d}$ 's has a maximal-order pole, namely the product for those  $\alpha_{a,b,d}$ 's with  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ .

We now restrict attention to  $\alpha_{a,b,d}$ 's with  $\gcd(a, b, d) = 1$ ; these are the  $\alpha_{a,b,d}$ 's in the set (6.6). For a fixed factorization  $n = ad$  with  $a > 0$  and  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , we have

$$(6.7) \quad \prod_{b \in B_d} -j_5 \circ \alpha_{a,b,d} = \prod_{b \in B_d} -(e^{-2\pi i(a\tau + 5b)/d} + \dots) = (-1)^{|B_d|} \zeta_d^{\sum_{b \in B_d} -5b} q_\tau^{-a/d} + \dots,$$

with  $B_d = \{b \mid 0 \leq b < d, (b, n/d, d) = 1\}$ . To compute the power of  $\zeta_d$  in (6.7), we apply the following lemma to the primitive  $d$ th root of unity  $\zeta_d^5$ :

**Lemma 6.7.** *For positive integers  $d$  and  $k$  with  $k|d$ , and  $\zeta_d$  a primitive  $d$ th root of unity,*

$$\zeta_d^{\sum_{0 \leq b < d, (b,k)=1} -b} = (-1)^{-1+d/k+\delta_{k,2}}$$

where  $\delta_{k,2} = 1$  for  $k = 2$  and  $\delta_{k,2} = 0$  otherwise.

*Proof.* The case  $k = 1$  is straightforward, so we may assume  $k > 1$ . Thus, for  $0 \leq b < d$  we may use the division algorithm to write  $b = kq + r$  with  $0 \leq q < d/k$  and  $0 \leq r < k$  with  $(k, r) = 1$  (or more loosely,  $r \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times$ ). Since each such  $r$  shows up  $d/k$  times, if we define  $\zeta_k = \zeta_d^{d/k}$  and  $\zeta_{d/k} = \zeta_d^k$  then

$$\zeta_d^{\sum_{0 \leq b < d, (b,k)=1} -b} = \zeta_{d/k}^{\sum_{0 \leq q < d/k} q} \cdot \zeta_k^{\sum_{r \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times} r} = (-1)^{d/k-1} \cdot \zeta_k^{\sum_{r \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times} r} = (-1)^{d/k-1} (-1)^{\varphi(k)} \Phi_k(0)$$

where  $\Phi_k(0)$  is the constant term of the  $k$ th cyclotomic polynomial  $\Phi_k$  that has degree  $\varphi(k)$ . Since  $\Phi_k = \prod_{e|k} (X^e - 1)^{\mu(k/e)}$ , we have  $\Phi_k(0) = (-1)^{\sum_{e|k} \mu(k/e)} = 1$  since  $k > 1$ . Since  $\varphi(k)$  is even for  $k > 2$  whereas  $\varphi(2) = 1$ , we are done.  $\blacksquare$

By the lemma, for  $a|n$  and  $d = n/a$  with  $a > 0$  and  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , we get

$$(6.8) \quad \prod_{0 \leq b < d, (b,(a,d))=1} -j_5 \circ \alpha_{a,b,d} = (-1)^{|B_d| - 1 + d/(a,d) + \delta_{(a,d),2}} q_\tau^{-a/d} + \dots$$

The product of the terms in (6.8) over all  $a$ 's gives the unique most polar contribution in the coefficients of  $F_n$ , so the product of the sign-coefficients on the right side of 6.8 over all factorizations  $n = ad$  with  $a > 0$  and  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  is

$$(6.9) \quad \prod_{d|n, d \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}} (-1)^{d/(n/d, d) + \delta_{(n/d, d), 2}} = u_n$$

(with the product taken over positive divisors), and this dominant term arises from a product of  $t_n$  distinct  $j_5 \circ \alpha$ 's with

$$(6.10) \quad t_n = \sum_{d|n, d \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}} |B_d|$$

(with the sum taken over positive divisors), so the most polar term occurs against  $Y^{\deg \pi_n - t_n}$  in (6.3). Hence,  $s_n = \deg \pi_n - t_n$ . The case  $n = 2$  is trivial, so we may assume  $n > 2$ , and so

$$\deg \pi_n = [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)] = n \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$$

is even. Thus,  $s_n \equiv t_n \pmod{2}$ , and so  $(-1)^{s_n} = (-1)^{t_n}$ . Using (6.9) and (6.10), we thereby get

$$(6.11) \quad \varepsilon_n = (-1)^{s_n} u_n = (-1)^{t_n} u_n = \prod_{d|n, d \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}} (-1)^{-1 + d/(n/d, d) + \delta_{(n/d, d), 2}} = \prod_{d|n} \left(\frac{d}{5}\right)^{-1 + d/(n/d, d) + \delta_{(n/d, d), 2}}.$$

The exponent  $-1 + d/(n/d, d) + \delta_{(n/d, d), 2}$  is even when  $d$  is odd, so  $\varepsilon_n = 1$  for odd  $n$ . This shows that if  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  then  $n$  must be even; we will proceed by analyzing the cases  $\text{ord}_2(n) = 1$ ,  $\text{ord}_2(n) = 2$ , and  $\text{ord}_2(n) > 2$ .

Now we may suppose  $n = 2^e n'$  with odd  $n'$  relatively prime to 5 and arbitrary  $e \geq 1$ . If  $e = 1$ , then  $n' \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  and  $n' > 1$  (since  $n > 2$ ). The contribution at  $d = 2d'$  in (6.11) is  $(d|5)$  and hence pairing up the contributions at  $2d'$  and  $2n'/d'$  (except if  $d' = n'/d'$ ) gives a product of  $(n'|5) = 1$  for each such pair of terms. Thus, the total product  $\varepsilon_n$  is equal to 1 if  $n'$  is not a square and is equal to  $(m|5)$  if  $n' = m^2$ . This shows that if  $\text{ord}_2(n) = 1$  and  $n > 2$  then  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  if and only if  $n = 2m^2$  with  $m \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , as desired.

If  $e = 2$ , then  $n' \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  (so  $n'$  is not a square) and the only possible non-trivial contributions to the product for  $\varepsilon_n$  in (6.11) are  $(d|5) = -(d'|5)$  at  $d = 2d'$  with  $(d', n'/d') = 1$  and  $(d|5) = (d'|5)$  at  $d = 4d'$  without restriction on the divisor  $d'$  of  $n'$ . For the product of the first collection of such terms (at all  $d = 2d'$  with  $(d', n'/d') = 1$ ) we can pair up  $2d'$  and  $2n'/d'$  to get  $(n'|5) = -1$  appearing half as many times as there are subsets of the set of prime factors of  $n'$ ; any such power set has even size since  $n' > 1$  (as then  $n'$  has a non-empty set of prime factors), and has size divisible by 4 if and only if  $n'$  has at least two prime factors. Thus, the divisors  $d = 2d'$  with  $(d', n'/d') = 1$  contribute a total product of  $-1$  to  $\varepsilon_n$  in (6.11) when  $n' > 1$  is an odd prime power (with the prime necessarily  $\equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$ ), and otherwise these divisors contribute a total product of 1 to  $\varepsilon_n$ ; similarly, the total contribution to  $\varepsilon_n$  for the set of divisors  $d = 4d'$  is

$$\prod_{d'|n'} \left(\frac{d'}{5}\right) = (-1)^{\sigma_0(n')/2}.$$

Thus, when  $n = 4n'$  with odd  $n'$  we see that  $\varepsilon_n = -1$  if and only if one of the following mutually exclusive conditions holds:

- $n = 4p^a$  for an odd prime  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  and  $a \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  (this ensures that  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  and that  $-(-1)^{\sigma_0(p^a)/2} = (-1)^{(a+3)/2}$  is equal to  $-1$ ),
- $n = 4p^a m^2$  with an odd prime  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  and an odd  $m > 1$  not divisible by  $p$  such that  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  (this ensures that  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  and that  $(-1)^{\sigma_0(p^a m^2)/2} = (-1)^{(a+1)/2}$  is equal to  $-1$ ).

It remains to consider  $n = 2^e n'$  with  $n'$  odd and  $e \geq 3$ . Writing an even divisor  $d$  of  $n$  in the form  $2^{e'} d'$  with  $e' \geq 1$  and  $d' | n'$ , we get a contribution of  $(d|5)$  at  $d$  in (6.11) in each of the following mutually exclusive cases:

- $(d, n/d) = 1$  (that is,  $e' = e$  and  $(d', n'/d') = 1$ ),
- $(d, n/d) = 2$  with  $d/2$  odd (that is,  $e' = 1$  and  $(d', n'/d') = 1$ ),
- $(d, n/d) > 2$  with  $d/(n/d, d)$  even (that is,  $e/2 < e' \leq e - 1$  with the extra condition  $(d', n'/d') \neq 1$  when  $e' = e - 1$ ).

Note in particular that terms with  $e/2 < e' < e - 1$  (vacuous for  $e = 3$ ) contribute  $(d|5)$  in (6.11) without restriction on  $d'$ . All other  $d$ 's not mentioned in the preceding list make trivial contribution to  $\varepsilon_n$  (due to evenness on the exponent of  $(d|5)$  in (6.11) for such  $d$ ).

We first consider the case when  $e$  is even (so  $e \geq 4$ ), so  $n'$  is odd and  $n' \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  (so  $n'$  is a nonsquare, and hence  $\sigma_0(n')$  is even and  $n' > 1$ ). For each  $d' | n'$ , we get a contribution of  $(2d'|5) = -(d'|5)$  at terms  $d = 2d'$  in (6.11) if  $(d', n'/d') = 1$  and we get a contribution of  $(2^{e-1}d'|5) = -(d'|5)$  at terms  $d = 2^{e-1}d'$  in (6.11) if  $(d', n'/d') \neq 1$ . Thus, the combined contributions in (6.11) for  $e' = 1$  and  $e' = e - 1$  is the product of  $-(d'|5)$ 's with each divisor  $d'$  of  $n'$  appearing exactly once. Since  $n'$  is a nonsquare, the number of such divisors is even (namely,  $\sigma_0(n')$ ) and we may pair up  $d'$  with  $n'/d'$  (contributing a product of  $(n'|5) = -1$ ) to arrive at a total product of  $(-1)^{\sigma_0(n')/2}$  by the terms with  $e' = 1$  and  $e' = e - 1$ . At the terms  $d = 2^{e'} d'$  with  $e/2 < e' < e - 1$  and  $e' = e$  the contribution in (6.11) is  $(d|5) = (-1)^{e'} (d'|5)$  without restriction on  $d'$ , so taking the product of these contributions with fixed  $e'$  gives  $(-1)^{\sigma_0(n')/2}$  since the sign  $(-1)^{e'}$  appears an even number of times. Hence, we conclude that

$$\varepsilon_n = (-1)^{(e/2)\sigma_0(n')/2}$$

when  $e = \text{ord}_2(n)$  is even. This is equal to  $-1$  if and only if  $e/2$  is odd and  $\sigma_0(n')/2$  is odd, and this gives rise to exactly the listed cases when  $\text{ord}_2(n)$  is both even and larger than 2.

Finally, suppose  $e > 2$  is odd, so  $n' \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ . Since now  $(n'|5) = 1$ , a computation as for the case of even  $e$  shows that the total contribution of all terms  $d = 2^{e'} d'$  in (6.11) with a fixed  $e'$  satisfying  $(e + 1)/2 \leq e' < e - 1$  or  $e' = e$  is 1 when  $n'$  is not a square and is  $(-1)^{e'} (m|5)$  when  $n' = m^2$ . There are  $(e - 1)/2$  such terms, with total product 1 when  $n'$  is not a square and total product  $(-1)^e (-1)^{(e-3)/2} (m|5)^{(e-1)/2} = (-m|5)^{(e-1)/2}$  when  $n' = m^2$ ; when  $n' = 1$  this is  $(-1)^{(e-1)/2}$ . We also have to account for contributions in (6.11) at terms  $d = 2^{e'} d'$  with  $e' = 1$  and  $e' = e - 1$ . For  $e' = 1$  we get contributions  $(2d'|5) = -(d'|5)$  when  $(d', n'/d') = 1$ , and for  $e' = e - 1$  we get contributions  $(2^{e-1}d'|5) = (d'|5)$  when  $(d', n'/d') \neq 1$ . In particular, when  $n' = 1$  we find that  $\varepsilon_n = (-1)^{(e+1)/2}$ ; this gives the asserted list of possibilities when  $n$  is a power of 2 that is divisible by 8. Assuming now that  $n' > 1$  (i.e.,  $n$  is not a power of 2), so  $n'$  has a non-empty set of prime factors, the number of divisors  $d' | n'$  with  $(d', n'/d') = 1$  is even. Thus, the product of the contributions for  $e' = 1$  and  $e' = e - 1$  is equal to  $\prod_{d' | n'} (d'|5)$ , and by pairing  $d'$  with  $n'/d'$  (when  $d' \neq n'/d'$ ) and recalling that  $(n'|5) = 1$  we see that this product is 1 when  $n'$  is a nonsquare and is  $(m|5)$  when  $n' = m^2$ . Thus, when  $n' > 1$  is a nonsquare we get  $\varepsilon_n = 1$  and when  $n' = m^2 > 1$  we get  $\varepsilon_n = -(-m|5)^{(e+1)/2}$ . Setting this equal to  $-1$  gives the elements on the desired list of possibilities that have not yet been obtained. ■

We next wish to establish an analogue of Kronecker's congruence.

**Theorem 6.8** (Kronecker's congruence). *Let  $p \neq 5$  be prime. If  $p \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  then*

$$(6.12) \quad F_p(X, Y) \equiv (Y - X^p)(Y^p - X) \pmod{p\mathbf{Z}[X, Y]},$$

and if  $p \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  then

$$(6.13) \quad F_p(X, Y) \equiv (Y - X^p)(XY^p + 1) \pmod{p\mathbf{Z}[X, Y]}.$$

These congruences are sensitive to the arbitrary choice of sign in Definition 6.4.

*Proof.* Since the map  $\pi_p$  has degree  $p + 1$ , by Theorem 6.3 we know *a priori* that  $F_p \bmod p$  has degree  $p + 1$  in each of  $X$  and  $Y$ . Thus, if we can prove that the right sides of (6.12) and (6.13) divide  $F_p \bmod p$  then degree considerations force the congruence up to a nonzero scalar  $c_p \in \mathbf{F}_p^\times$ . Since  $F_p \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  has a unique monomial term  $X^{r_p} Y^{p+1}$  and this term appears in  $F_p$  with coefficient equal to 1, the same holds under reduction modulo  $p$  (with the same  $r_p$ ), and so the  $Y$ -monicity of the right sides of (6.12) and (6.13) shows that such a nonzero scalar ambiguity  $c_p \in \mathbf{F}_p^\times$  is necessarily trivial. That is, it suffices to prove that  $F_p \bmod p$  is divisible by the right sides of (6.12) and (6.13).

The symmetry properties of  $F_p$  in Theorem 6.5 reduce the divisibility claim to the assertion that  $Y - X^p$  divides  $F_p \bmod p$ . That is, we claim that one of the irreducible components of  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{F}_p[X, Y]/(F_p)$  is defined by the vanishing of  $Y - X^p$ . We will construct such an irreducible component by studying irreducible components of the mod- $p$  fiber of  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(p))$ .

By the definition of  $F_p$ , the quasi-finite Kronecker map

$$j_{5,\mu} \times (j_{5,\mu} \circ w_p) : Y(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(p)) \rightarrow \mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]}^2$$

over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[1/5]$  factors through the zero-scheme of  $F_p(X, Y)$ . Passing to mod- $p$  fibers, the quasi-finite map

$$j_{5,\mu} \times (j_{5,\mu} \circ w_p) : Y(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(p))_{\mathbf{F}_p} \rightarrow \mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{F}_p}^2$$

factors through  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{F}_p[X, Y]/(F_p)$ . Thus, to prove that  $F_p \bmod p$  is divisible by  $Y - X^p$ , it is enough to find an irreducible component  $Y'$  of  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(p))_{\mathbf{F}_p}$  such that  $j_{5,\mu}(E, \iota)^p = j_{5,\mu}(E/C, \iota')$  for geometric points  $y = (E, \iota, C)$  of  $Y'$ , where  $w_p(y) = (E/C, \iota', E[p]/C)$ ; we may also ignore finitely many points  $y$  (such as supersingular points). There are two irreducible components of  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(p))_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ , corresponding to  $C$  being étale or multiplicative. Let  $Y'$  be the component corresponding to multiplicative  $C$ , so for ordinary geometric points  $y \in Y'$  we see that there is an isomorphism  $E/C \simeq E^{(p)}$  carrying the  $p$ -isogeny  $E \rightarrow E/C$  to the relative Frobenius morphism  $E \rightarrow E^{(p)}$ . If  $P = \iota(1, 0)$  and  $Q = \iota(0, 1)$  in the finite étale group  $E[5]$ , then  $\iota'(1, 0) = p^{-1}P^{(p)}$  and  $\iota'(0, 1) = Q^{(p)}$  in  $E^{(p)}$ .

Let  $k$  be the field over which the geometric point  $y$  lives. By the definition of the  $\Gamma_\mu(5)$ -moduli functor, the point  $w_p(y) = (E^{(p)}; p^{-1}P^{(p)}, Q^{(p)}) \in Y_\mu(5)(k)$  is the image of  $y \in Y_\mu(5)(k)$  under the Frobenius morphism of the  $\mathbf{F}_p$ -scheme  $Y_\mu(5)$ . Since the isomorphism  $j_{5,\mu} : Y_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{F}_p} \simeq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_p}^1$  commutes with absolute Frobenius morphisms (as do all maps of  $\mathbf{F}_p$ -schemes), and the absolute Frobenius morphism on  $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{F}_p}^1$  is given by  $t \mapsto t^p$  in terms of the standard coordinate on  $\mathbf{P}^1$ , we conclude that  $j_{5,\mu}(w_p(y)) = j_{5,\mu}(y)^p$  as desired. ■

To construct an analogue of  $F_n$  for all  $n$ , the key issue is to formulate a good enhanced moduli functor that allows  $n$  to be divisible by 5. We will explain the case  $n = 5$ , because in this case the polynomial  $F_5$  relating  $j_5(\tau)$  and  $j_5(5\tau)$  has a very special form. The general case is left to the interested reader (and will not be used later).

**Theorem 6.9.** *There is a unique rational function  $h \in \mathbf{Q}(x)$  such that  $j_5(\tau/5)^5 = h(j_5(\tau))$ , and  $h$  is not a polynomial.*

This theorem says that we may find an  $F_5$  with the form  $h_1(Y)X^5 - h_2(Y)$  for relatively prime  $h_1, h_2 \in \mathbf{Z}[Y]$  with  $\deg h_1 > 0$ . Such explicit  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are provided by a famous identity of Ramanujan [24, Theorem 3.2], but we prefer to suppress the explicit description of  $h = h_2/h_1$  until we have provided a geometric proof of its existence.

*Proof.* We begin by constructing a geometrically-connected finite cover of  $Y_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  that replaces the role of  $Y(\Gamma_\mu(N), \Gamma_0(n))$  in our study of  $F_n$  for  $n$  relatively prime to 5. Let us work more generally at the outset with any  $N \geq 3$  instead of with  $N = 5$ . Over the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -scheme  $Y_\mu(N)$  there is a universal elliptic curve  $E \rightarrow Y_\mu(N)$  equipped with an isomorphism

$$\iota : \mu_N \times (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) \simeq E[N]$$

as  $Y_\mu(N)$ -groups. Let  $Q = \iota(1, 1) \in E[N](Y_\mu(N))$ , so the fiber  $[N]^{-1}(Q) \rightarrow Y_\mu(N)$  is an  $E[N]$ -torsor over  $Y_\mu(N)$ . Via  $\iota$ ,  $[N]^{-1}(Q)$  acquires a structure of torsor over  $\mu_N \times (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ . Passing to the quotient by the action of  $\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$  defines a  $\mu_N$ -torsor  $Y'_\mu(N) \rightarrow Y_\mu(N)$ . This torsor is geometrically connected over  $\mathbf{Q}$  because it is dominated by the geometrically-connected cover  $Y_\mu(N^2)$ . Our moduli-theoretic construction of  $Y'_\mu(N)$  extends across the cusps, so we get a geometrically-connected proper smooth curve  $X'_\mu(N)$  over  $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Q}$  that is a  $\mu_N$ -torsor over  $X_\mu(N)$ .

We shall need to carry out some calculations with analytic models for modular curves. Thus, we choose a connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and (without loss of generality) take  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/N}$  with  $i = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$ . We will use only  $\tau \in \mathfrak{H}$  because the action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(N)$  lifts via  $\pi_\zeta$  to the usual action on  $\mathfrak{H}$ .

Define  $\Gamma^0(m) \subseteq \Gamma(1)$  to be the preimage of the subgroup of matrices in  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/m\mathbf{Z})$  with vanishing upper-right corner. The normal subgroup  $\Gamma'(N) = \Gamma^0(N^2) \cap \Gamma(N)$  in  $\Gamma(N)$  has the property that the quotient  $\Gamma(N)/\Gamma'$  is cyclic of order  $N$ , and this quotient of  $\Gamma(N)/\Gamma(N^2)$  is naturally identified with the geometric Galois group of the covering  $X'_\mu(N) \rightarrow X_\mu(N)$ . In terms of analytic models,  $\mathbf{C}(X'_\mu(N))$  is identified with the field of level- $N^2$  modular functions that are  $\Gamma'(N)$ -invariant, and a generator of the Galois group of  $\mathbf{C}(X'_\mu(N))$  over  $\mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N))$  is represented by the action induced by  $\tau \mapsto \tau + N$  on  $\mathfrak{H}$ . In particular, since

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & N \end{pmatrix} \Gamma'(N) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & N \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \subseteq \Gamma(N),$$

for any  $f \in \mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N))$  the function  $g_f(\tau) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (f \circ \pi_\zeta)(\tau/N)$  lies in  $\mathbf{C}(X'_\mu(N))$  and a generator of the Galois group of  $\mathbf{C}(X'_\mu(N))$  over  $\mathbf{C}(X_\mu(N))$  acts on  $g_f$  via the operation  $\tau \mapsto \tau + N$ .

Let us specialize these considerations to the case  $N = 5$ . We conclude that the function  $g(\tau) = j_5(\tau/5)$  lies in a degree-5 extension  $K = \mathbf{Q}(X'_\mu(5))$  of  $\mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(5)) = \mathbf{Q}(j_5)$  with  $\mathbf{Q}$  algebraically closed in  $K$ , and that  $K(\zeta_5)/\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5, j_5)$  a Galois extension such that the Galois-orbit of  $g$  consists of the elements  $\zeta g$  for  $\zeta \in \mu_5$ . Thus,  $g^5$  is Galois-invariant, and so

$$g^5 \in K \cap \mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5, j_5) = \mathbf{Q}(j_5).$$

This produces the desired  $h \in \mathbf{Q}(x)$ , except for the fact that  $h$  cannot be a polynomial. That is, we must prove that  $g^5 \notin \mathbf{Q}[j_5]$ . Assuming otherwise, it would follow that  $g$  only has poles at cusps on  $X'_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  lying over the unique point  $\infty \in X_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}}$  where  $j_5$  has a pole. This is a contradiction since  $g(\tau) = j_5(\tau/5)$  has a pole at the cusp  $1/2$  that is not  $\Gamma(5)$ -equivalent to  $\infty$ .  $\blacksquare$

It is natural to want to make the rational function  $h$  in Theorem 6.9 explicit. Ramanujan discovered the answer:

$$(6.14) \quad h(x) = x \cdot \frac{x^4 + 3x^3 + 4x^2 + 2x + 1}{x^4 - 2x^3 + 4x^2 - 3x + 1}.$$

In Example B.3 in Appendix B we will give an easy derivation of this identity by using the definition of  $j_5$  in terms of Klein forms;  $h$  could also be determined by pole- and cusp-chasing via Table B.1.

## 7. ESTIMATES ON COEFFICIENTS OF $F_n$

Since the classical modular polynomials  $\Phi_n(X, Y)$  are notoriously impossible to compute, due to the gigantic height of these polynomials, one might expect the  $F_n$ 's to be equally useless in practice. Remarkably, this is not so: an inspection of the table of  $F_n$ 's in Appendix C shows that (for  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$ ) the coefficients are rather small!

Computation of  $F_n$  for larger values of  $n$ , however, reveals that the coefficients of  $F_n$  do grow quickly with  $n$ . Nonetheless, a comparison of the coefficients of  $F_n$  and the coefficients of the classical modular polynomial  $\Phi_n$  of level  $n$  shows that the coefficients of  $F_n$  are *dramatically* smaller than those of  $\Phi_n$ . This has the practical consequence that for moderate  $n$  we can work computationally with  $F_n$ .

In this section we use the methods of Cohen and Rademacher (that estimate the coefficients of the  $\Phi_n$ 's and the  $q$ -expansion coefficients of  $j$ ) to estimate the  $q$ -expansion coefficients of  $j_5$  and to prove that  $F_n$  has small coefficients (with respect to  $n$ ) in comparison to  $\Phi_n$  when  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$ .

For any nonzero  $P = \sum a_I z^I \in \mathbf{C}[z_1, \dots, z_m]$ , we define the *logarithmic height*

$$h(P) = \log(\max_I |a_I|).$$

Observe that for positive  $c \in \mathbf{R}^\times$ ,  $h(cP) = \log(c) + h(P)$ . In this section, we will prove

**Theorem 7.1.** *For  $(n, 5) = 1$ ,*

$$h(F_n) = \frac{1}{10} [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)] \left( \log n - 2 \sum_{p|n} \frac{\log p}{p} + O(1) \right)$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

Before we prove Theorem 7.1, let us record a corollary that compares the coefficients of  $F_n$  against coefficients of  $\Phi_n$  for  $n$  relatively prime to 5.

**Corollary 7.2.** *For any congruence subgroup  $\Gamma \subseteq \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ , let  $\bar{\Gamma}$  denote the image of  $\Gamma$  in  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})/\{\pm 1\}$ . We have*

$$\lim_{\substack{n \rightarrow \infty \\ (n, 5) = 1}} \frac{h(\Phi_n)}{h(F_n)} = [\bar{\Gamma}(1) : \bar{\Gamma}(5)] = 60.$$

*Proof.* This follows at once from Theorem 7.1 and the asymptotic formula for  $h(\Phi_n)$  analogous to Theorem 7.1 as given in the main theorem in [4]. ■

*Remark 7.3.* Since  $h(F_n)$  is the *logarithmic height*, Corollary 7.2 shows that the largest coefficient (in absolute value) of  $\Phi_n$  is comparable to the 60th power of the largest coefficient (in absolute value) of  $F_n$ .

We now prove Theorem 7.1. In what follows, it is understood that  $n$  denotes a positive integer relatively prime to 5. We also fix  $i = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathbf{C}$ . Our proof closely follows Cohen's paper [4] that establishes a similar estimate for the coefficients of the classical modular polynomial  $\Phi_n$ .

Let  $t \in \mathbf{R}$ . Since  $|j_5(it)| \rightarrow \infty$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , there exist  $s \in \mathbf{R}$  and distinct positive  $t_0, t_1 \in \mathbf{R}$  with  $t_0, t_1 \geq 1$  and  $s \geq 1$  such that  $|j_5(it_0)| = s$  and  $|j_5(it_1)| = 2s$ . Since  $\Gamma(5)$  acts without fixed points on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and  $j_5$  thereby realizes each connected component of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  as a covering space of the complement of a finite subset of  $\mathbf{CP}^1$ , it follows that the derivative  $j_5'$  is nonvanishing on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ . Since  $j_5 = q^{-1/5} + \dots$  has real coefficients, so  $j_5$  has real-analytic restriction to each connected component of the imaginary axis with deleted origin, the derivative of  $j_5$  on each such component (as parameterized by  $\pm it$  with  $t \in (0, \infty)$ ) is positive because  $j_5$  blows up to  $\infty$  as  $q \rightarrow 0$ . Thus,  $j_5(it)$  is strictly increasing in  $t \in (0, \infty)$ , so  $t_0 < t_1$  and  $j_5(it)$  is strictly increasing for  $t_0 \leq t \leq t_1$ . We fix, once and for all, any such  $s$  and corresponding  $t_0 < t_1$  as above.

**Lemma 7.4.** *For  $t_0 \leq t \leq t_1$  we have*

$$h(F_n(j_5(it), Y)) = \sum_{ad=n, a>0} S_d(t) + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)])$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , where

$$(7.1) \quad S_d(t) = \sum_{\substack{0 \leq b < d \\ (a, b, d) = 1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}\},$$

and  $\chi_5 : \mathbf{Z} - 5\mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \{\pm 1\}$  is the unique quadratic Dirichlet character modulo 5. The implicit  $O$ -constant depends only on  $t_0, t_1$ .

*Proof.* It is well-known that the coefficients of a monic polynomial  $P(x) = (x - \omega_1) \cdots (x - \omega_d)$  are bounded between  $2^{-d}M$  and  $2^dM$  where  $M = \prod_{j=1}^d \max\{1, |\omega_j|\}$ . Taking logarithms yields

$$h(P) = \sum_{j=1}^d \log \max\{1, |\omega_j|\} + O(d)$$

with an implicit absolute  $O$ -constant that is independent of  $d$  and  $P$ . We now apply this general estimate to suitable specializations of  $F_n$  in the first variable.

By (6.3) and (6.6),

$$(7.2) \quad F_n(j_5(it), Y) = j_5(it)^{r_n} \prod_{\substack{ad=n, a>0 \\ 0 \leq b' < d \\ (a, b', d)=1}} (Y - j_5 \circ \sigma_a((ait + 5b')/d))$$

with  $\sigma_a$  as in (6.5) and  $r_n$  defined by the condition that  $\pm X^{r_n} Y^{\deg \pi_n}$  is the unique monomial term appearing in  $F_n(X, Y)$  with  $Y$ -degree  $\deg \pi_n$  (see Theorem 6.3). By Corollary 5.5, we have  $|j_5 \circ \sigma_a| = |j_5|^{\chi_5(a)}$ , and since  $F_n(j_5(it), Y)$  has degree  $[\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]$  in  $Y$  we obtain

$$h(F_n(j_5(it), Y)) = r_n \log j_5(it) + \sum_{ad=n, a>0} \sum_{\substack{0 \leq b' < d \\ (a, b', d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait + 5b')/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}\} + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]).$$

Since  $\log(2s) = \log(j_5(it_1)) \geq \log j_5(it)$  and  $1 \leq r_n \leq \deg \pi_n = [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]$ , we can absorb the first term into  $O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)])$ . By the division algorithm, we may write  $5b' = dq + b$  with  $0 \leq b < d$ . From Theorem A.3, for any integer  $k$  we have  $j_5(z + k) = \zeta j_5(z)$  for some fifth root of unity  $\zeta$ . It follows that the function  $|j_5(z)|$  is invariant under integer translations, so

$$|j_5((ait + 5b')/d)| = |j_5((ait + b)/d + q)| = |j_5((ait + b)/d)|.$$

Finally, since  $(n, 5) = 1$  and  $ad = n$ , multiplication by 5 on  $\mathbf{Z}/d\mathbf{Z}$  is an isomorphism. Thus, we have

$$\sum_{\substack{0 \leq b' < d \\ (a, b', d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait + 5b')/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}\} = \sum_{\substack{0 \leq b < d \\ (a, b, d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}\} = S_d(t).$$

■

Our next goal is to estimate the sums  $S_d(t)$  for fixed  $t$  between  $t_0$  and  $t_1$ . In order to do this, we must bound  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}$  for factorizations  $n = ad$  with  $a, d > 0$ ,  $0 \leq b < d$ , and  $(a, b, d) = 1$ . This will be straightforward if  $at/d$  is sufficiently large, but slightly complicated when  $at/d$  is small. When  $at/d$  is close to 0, then  $(ait + b)/d$  is close to  $b/d$ . In these cases, we will use our knowledge of the behavior of  $j_5$  near the cusps of  $X(5)$  to provide an upper bound for  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}$ .

Recall that the *Farey sequence*  $\mathcal{F}_N$  is the ordered list

$$\mathcal{F}_N = \{h/k \in [0, 1] \mid h, k \in \mathbf{Z}, \gcd(h, k) = 1, 1 \leq k \leq N\}$$

whose elements are enumerated in increasing order. We will estimate  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}$  when  $b/d$  is “close” to  $h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N$  and  $at/d \leq 1/2$  by expanding  $j_5$  in a local parameter about the cusp  $h/k$ . Equivalently, we shall find some  $\gamma_{h/k} \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  taking  $h/k$  to the cusp  $\infty$  and use our knowledge of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5 \circ \gamma_{h/k}$  to estimate  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{\chi_5(a)}$ . First, we need to make precise what we mean by “close” to  $h/k$ . To do this, put  $N = \lfloor d/(nt)^{1/2} \rfloor$ ; evidently  $N \geq 1$ . We will partition the interval  $I(N) = [1/(N+1), (N+2)/(N+1))$  into disjoint intervals  $I_N(h/k)$  containing  $h/k$  for each  $h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N$  and consider  $b/d$  “close” to  $h/k$  when  $b/d \in I_N(h/k)$ .



Let us enumerate the Farey fractions  $\mathcal{F}_N$  as  $\lambda_0, \dots, \lambda_K$ . Recall that for any consecutive Farey fractions  $h_1/k_1 = \lambda_{i-1}$  and  $h_2/k_2 = \lambda_i$  the mediant  $\mu_i = (h_1 + h_2)/(k_1 + k_2)$  satisfies  $\lambda_{i-1} < \mu_i < \lambda_i$ . We set  $\mu_0 = 0$  and define the interval

$$(7.3) \quad I_N(\lambda_i) = \begin{cases} [\mu_i, \mu_{i+1}) & i < K \\ [1/(N+1), (N+2)/(N+1)) & i = K \end{cases},$$

so  $\lambda_i \in I_N(\lambda_i)$ . Since  $\mu_1 = 1/(N+1)$ , we have the disjoint-union decomposition

$$(7.4) \quad I(N) = [1/(N+1), (N+2)/(N+1)) = \bigcup_{h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N - \{0\}} I_N(h/k).$$

By [4, Lemma 3], with  $\lambda_i = h/k \neq 0$ ,

$$(7.5) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2Nk} &\leq \lambda_i - \mu_{i-1} \leq \frac{1}{(N+1)k} \\ \frac{1}{2Nk} &\leq \mu_i - \lambda_i \leq \frac{1}{(N+1)k}. \end{aligned}$$

We can now provide good estimates for  $j_5((ait+b)/d)$ . For convenience, we adopt the notation of [4, §3.1] and put

$$g_{h,k}(x) = 2\pi \cdot \frac{nt/(dk)^2}{(at/d)^2 + (x - h/k)^2}.$$

**Lemma 7.5.** *For  $\sigma, t \in \mathbf{R}$ , let  $q = e^{2\pi i(\sigma+it)}$ . Assume  $g(\sigma+it) := \sum_{j \geq 0} a_j q^j$  is absolutely convergent and nonzero for  $t > 0$ . There is a constant  $C_1 \geq 0$  depending only on  $g$  such that*

$$(7.6) \quad |g(\sigma+it)| \leq C_1$$

for  $t \geq 1/2$  and all  $\sigma$ . If further  $a_0 \neq 0$ , then there is a positive constant  $C_0 > 0$  depending only on  $g$  such that

$$(7.7) \quad C_0 \leq |g(\sigma+it)|$$

for  $t \geq 1/2$  and all  $\sigma$ . In particular, if  $at/d \geq 1/2$  then

$$(7.8) \quad \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\} = \begin{cases} (2\pi/5)(nt/d^2) + O(1) & \text{if } a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5} \\ O(1) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

If  $at/d \leq 1$ , put  $N = \lfloor d/(nt)^{1/2} \rfloor$  and let  $I_N$  be defined by (7.3). For  $b/d \in I_N(h/k)$ ,

$$(7.9) \quad \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{5}g_{h,k}(b/d) + O(1) & \text{if } (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5} \\ O(1) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

The implicit  $O$ -constants are independent of all parameters  $a, b, d, t, h, k$ .

*Remark 7.6.* Observe that there is an overlap in the range of applicability of (7.8) and (7.9), namely  $1/2 \leq at/d \leq 1$ . For these values of  $t$ , both (7.8) and (7.9) give the same estimate of  $O(1)$ , as is readily verified by (7.5). Indeed, it is not difficult to see from the definition of  $g_{h,k}(x)$  that (7.8) and (7.9) differ by at most a constant when  $at/d$  is in any compact interval bounded away from 0. Thus, for values of  $at/d$  in this range of overlap, we shall use whichever of these two estimates is more convenient.

*Proof.* Since the sum defining  $g(\sigma+it)$  is absolutely convergent for  $t > 0$ , we have  $g(\sigma+it) \rightarrow a_0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . We may therefore find  $T \geq 1/2$  such  $|a_0|/2 \leq |g(\sigma+it)| \leq |a_0| + 1$  for all  $t > T$ . This proves (7.6) and (7.7) when  $t > T$ . To handle  $T \leq t \leq 1/2$ , we observe that  $g(\sigma+it)$  is periodic under  $\sigma \mapsto \sigma + 1$ , so since the region  $K = \{|\sigma| \leq 1/2\} \cap \{1/2 \leq t \leq T\}$  is compact and  $g(z)$  is continuous and nonzero on  $K$ , we have

$C_0 \leq |g(z)| \leq C_1$  for some absolute constants  $C_0 > 0$  and  $C_1$  as claimed. The estimate (7.8) now follows from (7.6) when  $a \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  and from (7.7) when  $a \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{5}$  upon taking  $g = (q^{1/5}j_5)^{x_5(a)}$ .

To prove (7.9), suppose that  $b/d \in I_N(h/k)$  and put

$$\gamma_{h/k} := \begin{pmatrix} v & u \\ -k & h \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $uk + hv = 1$ , and we require  $5|u$  if  $5|k$  (so  $\gamma_{h,k}$  and  $\sigma_h^{-1}$  have the same image in  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  when  $5|k$ ). The usual calculation shows that

$$(7.10) \quad \mathrm{Im}(\gamma_{h/k}((ait + b)/d)) = \frac{nt/(dk)^2}{(at/d)^2 + (b/d - h/k)^2} = \frac{1}{2\pi} g_{h,k}(b/d).$$

Now by (7.5) we have  $|b/d - h/k| \leq 1/(N+1)k$ , and since  $N = \lfloor d/(nt)^{1/2} \rfloor$  satisfies  $1/(N+1) \leq (nt)^{1/2}/d$ , it follows (using an easy direct check when  $h/k = 0$ ) that

$$(7.11) \quad |b/d - h/k| \leq 1/(N+1)k \leq (nt)^{1/2}/(dk).$$

Since  $h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N$  we have  $k \leq N \leq d/(nt)^{1/2}$ , which implies  $1 \leq d/(k(nt)^{1/2})$ , whence multiplying by  $nt/d^2$  and recalling that  $ad = n$  yields

$$(7.12) \quad at/d = nt/d^2 \leq (nt)^{1/2}/(dk).$$

Combining (7.10) with (7.11), and (7.12), we obtain

$$\mathrm{Im}(\gamma_{h/k}((ait + b)/d)) = \frac{nt/(dk)^2}{(at/d)^2 + (b/d - h/k)^2} \geq \frac{nt/(dk)^2}{nt/(dk)^2 + nt/(dk)^2} = 1/2.$$

If  $k \not\equiv 0 \pmod{5}$ , then from our calculations in Table B.1 we have

$$j_5 \circ \gamma_{h/k}^{-1} = c(h/k) + O(q),$$

where  $c(h/k) \neq 0$  is constant. Since  $j_5((ait + b)/d) = j_5 \circ \gamma_{h/k}^{-1}(\gamma_{h/k}((ait + b)/d))$  and  $\mathrm{Im}(\gamma_{h/k}((ait + b)/d)) \geq 1/2$ , we apply (7.6) and (7.7) to  $g = j_5 \circ \gamma_{h/k}^{-1}$  to find that  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{x_5(a)} = O(1)$  for all  $b/d \in I_N(h/k)$ .

It remains to estimate  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}$  when  $k \equiv 0 \pmod{5}$ . In these cases,  $\gamma_{h,k}$  and  $\sigma_h^{-1}$  have the same image in  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ , so

$$|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{x_5(a)} = |j_5(\gamma_{h,k}(ait + b)/d)|^{x_5(ah)}.$$

If  $h \not\equiv \pm a \pmod{5}$ , then  $ah \not\equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , and since  $\mathrm{Im}(\gamma_{h/k}((ait + b)/d)) \geq 1/2$ , we can apply (7.8) to obtain  $|j_5((ait + b)/d)|^{x_5(a)} = O(1)$ . On the other hand, if  $h \equiv \pm a \pmod{5}$  then  $ah \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$ , so another application of (7.8) and (7.10) yields (7.9).  $\blacksquare$

Using Lemma 7.5, we can estimate the sums  $S_d(t)$ :

**Lemma 7.7.** *If  $d < (nt)^{1/2}$  then*

$$(7.13) \quad S_d = O(n/d)$$

*and if  $d \geq (nt)^{1/2}$  then*

$$(7.14) \quad S_d = \frac{1}{10} \frac{d}{(a,d)} \varphi((a,d)) \log(d^2/n) + O(\sigma_1(d/(a,d))) + O(d\sigma_1((a,d))/(a,d)),$$

*where the implicit  $O$ -constants depends only on  $t_0, t_1$ .*

*Proof.* The estimate (7.13) follows immediately from (7.8). To obtain (7.14), we set  $N = \lfloor d/(nt)^{1/2} \rfloor$  and observe that  $N \geq 1$ . Recall the definition of  $I(N)$  given in (7.4). By Theorem A.3, we have  $|j_5(z+m)| = |j_5(z)|$  for any integer  $m$ , so we may reindex the sum in (7.1) via

$$b \mapsto \begin{cases} b & \text{if } b/d \in [1/(N+1), 1] \\ b+d & \text{if } b/d \in [0, 1/(N+1)) \end{cases},$$

so that our original sum  $S_d(t)$  over all  $b/d \in [0, 1]$  is now a sum over all

$$b/d \in I(N) = [1/(N+1), (N+2)/(N+1)).$$

We therefore obtain

$$S_d(t) = \sum_{\substack{0 < b < d \\ (a,b,d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\} = \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I(N) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\}.$$

Since (7.4) gives a partition of  $I(N)$  into the disjoint intervals  $I_N(h/k)$  for  $h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N - \{0\}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} S_d(t) &= \sum_{h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N - \{0\}} \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{\substack{h=1 \\ (h,k)=1}}^k \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} \log \max\{1, |j_5((ait+b)/d)|^{x_5(a)}\}. \end{aligned}$$

We split this sum up into sums over  $(h, k) \equiv \pm(a, 0) \pmod{5}$  and over  $(h, k) \not\equiv \pm(a, 0) \pmod{5}$ , and use (7.9) to estimate the terms occurring in each sum:

$$S_d(t) = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} \frac{1}{5} (g_{h,k}(b/d) + O(1)) + \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \not\equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} O(1)$$

Since the intervals  $I_N(h/k)$  for  $h/k \in \mathcal{F}_N - \{0\}$  partition  $I(N)$ , the second double sum above is at most  $\sum_{b/d \in I(N)} O(1)$ ; since this sum has at most  $d$  terms, we get a contribution of  $O(d)$ . Exactly the same reasoning shows that the  $O(1)$ -term in the first double sum contributes  $O(d)$ , for a total error term of  $O(d)$ , with an implicit constant that depends only on  $t_0$  and  $t_1$ . Thus,

$$(7.15) \quad S_d(t) = \frac{1}{5} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} \sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} g_{h,k}(b/d) + O(d),$$

where the  $O(d)$ -term lies outside of the double summation. Now by [4, Lemma 6], we have

$$\sum_{\substack{b/d \in I_N(h/k) \\ (a,b,d)=1}} g_{h,k}(b/d) = k^{-2} \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f) F_f(dh/fk) + O\left(n^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))/(k(a,d))\right),$$

where

$$(7.16) \quad F_f(\theta) = \frac{2\pi^2 d}{f} \sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z}} e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df} e^{2\pi i v \theta}$$

and the  $O$ -constant depends only on  $t_0, t_1$ . Therefore,

$$S_d(t) = \frac{1}{5} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} \left( k^{-2} \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f) F_f(dh/fk) + O\left(n^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))/(k(a,d))\right) \right) + O(d),$$

where again the  $O(d)$ -term lies outside of the double summation.

The sum of the error terms in the double summation is bounded above by

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Cn^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))}{(a,d)} \cdot \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1}} \frac{1}{k} &\leq \frac{Cn^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))}{(a,d)} \cdot \sum_{1 \leq k \leq N} \frac{\varphi(k)}{k} \leq \frac{Cn^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))}{(a,d)} N \\ &\leq \frac{Cn^{1/2} \sigma_1((a,d))}{(a,d)} \frac{d}{(nt)^{1/2}} \leq Cd \sigma_1((a,d))/(a,d) \end{aligned}$$

with some constant  $C$  depending only on  $t_0, t_1$ ; in the last line we have used the fact that  $1 \leq t_0 \leq t$ . This estimate also absorbs the additional  $O(d)$ -term, so we obtain

$$(7.17) \quad S_d(t) = \frac{1}{5} \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f) \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} F_f(dh/fk) + O(d \sigma_1((a,d))/(a,d)).$$

with the error term outside of the double summation. We still need to estimate the sum

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} F_f(dh/fk),$$

which by (7.16) is

$$(7.18) \quad \frac{2\pi^2 d}{f} \sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z}} C_N(d|v|/f) e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df},$$

where

$$C_N(m) = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq k \leq N \\ k \equiv 0 \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} c_k(m) \quad \text{and} \quad c_k(m) = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \\ (h,k)=1 \\ h \equiv \pm a \pmod{5}}} e^{2\pi i h m / k}.$$

By Lemma D.3, we have  $|c_k(m)| \leq (k, m)$  when  $m \neq 0$ , and so

$$(7.19) \quad |C_N(m)| \leq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k^{-2} (k, m) \leq \sum_{d|m} d \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (jd)^{-2} = O(\sigma_1(|m|)/|m|)$$

for an absolute implicit  $O$ -constant. When  $m = 0$ , Lemma D.3 tells us that

$$\begin{aligned} C_N(0) &= \sum_{\substack{1 \leq k \leq N \\ k \equiv 0 \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \\ (h,k)=1 \\ h \equiv \pm a \pmod{5}}} 1 \\ &= \sum_{\substack{1 \leq k \leq N \\ k \equiv 0 \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} \left( \frac{1}{2} \varphi(k) \right), \end{aligned}$$

which by Lemma D.1 is

$$(7.20) \quad = \frac{1}{2\pi^2} \log N + O(1),$$

with an absolute implicit  $O$ -constant.

Putting (7.19) and (7.20) together and using (7.18), we see that

$$(7.21) \quad \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} F_f(dh/fk) = \frac{d}{f} \log N + O(d/f) + O \left( \sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z} - \{0\}} f \frac{\sigma_1(d|v|/f)}{d|v|} e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df} \right)$$

$$(7.22)$$

with absolute implicit  $O$ -constants. Now since  $f|(a, d)$  and  $(a, d)|(n/d)$  we clearly have  $df \leq n$  so that

$$e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df} \leq e^{-2\pi|v|t} \leq e^{-2\pi|v|}$$

since  $1 \leq t_0 \leq t$ . Therefore, putting  $C_1 = \sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z} - \{0\}} \frac{\sigma_1(|v|)}{|v|} e^{-2\pi(|v|-1)}$  and using the fact that  $\sigma_1(d|v|/f) \leq \sigma_1(d/f)\sigma_1(|v|)$ , we have

$$\sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z} - \{0\}} f \frac{\sigma_1(d|v|/f)}{d|v|} e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df} \leq C_1(f/d)\sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi nt/df} \leq C_1\sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df},$$

where we have again used the inequality  $t \geq t_0 \geq 1$  and the fact that  $f|d$  (so  $f/d < 1$ ). Thus,

$$(7.23) \quad \sum_{v \in \mathbf{Z} - \{0\}} f \frac{\sigma_1(d|v|/f)}{d|v|} e^{-2\pi|v|nt/df} = O(\sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df})$$

with an absolute implicit  $O$ -constant, and since  $N = \lfloor \sqrt{d^2/nt} \rfloor$  we see that  $\log N = \frac{1}{2} \log(d^2/n) + O(1)$  with an implicit  $O$ -constant that depends only on  $t_0$  and  $t_1$  since  $1 \leq t_0 \leq t \leq t_1$ .

Incorporating the estimate (7.23) into (7.21) therefore gives

$$(7.24) \quad \sum_{\substack{1 \leq h \leq k \leq N \\ (h,k)=1 \\ (h,k) \equiv (\pm a, 0) \pmod{5}}} k^{-2} F_f(dh/fk) = \frac{d}{2f} \log(d^2/n) + O(d/f) + O \left( \sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df} \right),$$

where the implicit  $O$ -constants depend only on  $t_0, t_1$ . Combining (7.24) with (7.17), we have

$$(7.25) \quad S_a(t) = \frac{1}{5} \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f) \left( \frac{d}{2f} \log(d^2/n) + O(d/f) + O \left( \sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df} \right) \right) + O(d\sigma_1((a, d))/(a, d)).$$

Now,

$$\sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f)\sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df} \leq \sum_{f|(a,d)} \sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df} \leq \sum_{f|(a,d)} \sigma_1(df/(a, d))e^{-2\pi n f/(d(a,d))},$$

and since  $\sigma_1(df/(a, d)) \leq \sigma_1(d/(a, d))\sigma_1(f)$  and  $e^{-2\pi n f/(d(a,d))} \leq e^{-2\pi f}$  we have

$$(7.26) \quad \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f)\sigma_1(d/f)e^{-2\pi n/df} \leq \sigma_1(d/(a, d)) \sum_{f=1}^{\infty} \sigma_1(f)e^{-2\pi f}.$$

Finally, using the well-known identity

$$\sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f)(d/f) = (d/(a, d)) \sum_{f|(a,d)} \mu(f)(a, d)/f = d/(a, d)\varphi((a, d))$$

we see from (7.25) and (7.26) that

$$S_d(t) = \frac{1}{10} \frac{d}{(a, d)} \varphi((a, d)) \log(d^2/n) + O(d\varphi(a, d)/(a, d)) + O(\sigma_1(d/(a, d))) + O(d\sigma_1((a, d))/(a, d)),$$

where all implicit  $O$ -constants depend only on  $t_0$  and  $t_1$ . The trivial inequality  $\varphi((a, d)) \leq \sigma_1((a, d))$  therefore completes the proof.  $\blacksquare$

**Lemma 7.8.** *For  $1 \leq t_0 \leq t \leq t_1$ ,*

$$h(F_n(j_5(it), Y)) = \frac{1}{10} [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)] \left( \log n - 2 \sum_{p|n} \frac{\log p}{p} + O(1) \right)$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , where the  $O$ -constant depends only on  $t_0, t_1$ .

*Proof.* Using Lemmas 7.7 and 7.4, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} h(F_n(j_5(it), Y)) &= \sum_{ad=n, a>0} S_d(t) + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]) \\ &= H_1 + H_2 + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$H_1 = \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ d < (nt)^{1/2}}} O(n/d) = O\left(\sum_{d|n} n/d\right) = O(\sigma_1(n)) = O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)])$$

from [4, A2], and

$$\begin{aligned} H_2 &= \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ d \geq (nt)^{1/2}}} \left( \frac{1}{10} \frac{d}{(a, d)} \varphi((a, d)) \log(d^2/n) + O(\sigma_1(d/(a, d))) + O(d\sigma_1((a, d))/(a, d)) \right) \\ &= \sum_{\substack{d|n \\ d \geq (nt)^{1/2}}} \frac{1}{10} \frac{d}{(a, d)} \varphi((a, d)) \log(d^2/n) + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]) \end{aligned}$$

by (A2) and (A3) of [4]. We can rewrite this as

$$H_2 = \frac{1}{10} \sum_{d|n} \frac{d}{(a, d)} \varphi((a, d)) (\log n - 2 \log(n/d)) + O([\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]).$$

Finally, applying (A1) and Lemma A1 of [4], we obtain

$$H_2 = \frac{1}{10} [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)] \left( \log n - 2 \sum_{p|n} \frac{\log p}{p} + O(1) \right),$$

as desired.  $\blacksquare$

We have thus estimated  $h(F_n(j_5(it), Y))$ . Using the next lemma, this estimate will enable us to obtain Theorem 7.1.

**Lemma 7.9.** *Let  $P \in \mathbf{C}[Y]$  be any nonzero polynomial of degree  $\leq D$ . For any  $\theta > 0$  there exists an absolute constant  $c_\theta > 0$  depending only on  $\theta$  such that*

$$|h(P) - \log \sup_{\theta \leq y \leq 2\theta} |P(y)|| \leq c_\theta D.$$

*Proof.* This follows from the proof of [4, Lemma 9] which establishes the result for  $\theta = 1728$  but is in fact completely general. ■

We now prove Theorem 7.1. For convenience, we define  $h(0) = -\infty$  and use the usual conventions with the symbol  $-\infty$  in estimates below. Let  $D = [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]$  and write

$$F_n(X, Y) = P_0(X)Y^D + P_1(X)Y^{D-1} + \dots + P_D(X)$$

with  $P_j \in \mathbf{Z}[X]$  and  $P_0 \neq 0$ . In what follows, we implicitly omit any  $P_j$ 's that equal zero.

Certainly,  $h(F_n) = \max_{0 \leq j \leq D} h(P_j)$ . Since the degree of  $P_j$  is at most  $D$ , Lemma 7.9 with  $\theta = s \geq 1$  yields

$$h(F_n) = \max_{0 \leq j \leq D} \log \sup_{s \leq x \leq 2s} |P_j(x)| + O(D) = \sup_{s \leq x \leq 2s} \max_{0 \leq j \leq D} \log |P_j(x)| + O(D)$$

with an  $O(D)$ -term that lies outside of the supremum and has an  $O$ -constant depending only on  $s$ . Since  $\max_{0 \leq j \leq D} \log |P_j(x)| = h(F_n(x, Y))$  we get  $h(F_n) = \sup_{s \leq x \leq 2s} h(F_n(x, Y)) + O(D)$ . By the choice of  $s$ , the interval  $[t_0, t_1]$  corresponds bijectively under  $t \mapsto j_5(it)$  to the interval  $[s, 2s]$ , so any  $x \in [s, 2s]$  satisfies  $x = j_5(it)$  for some  $t \in [t_0, t_1]$ . Lemma 7.8 now completes the proof as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  since  $D = [\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(n)]$  and

$$\log n - 2 \sum_{p|n} \frac{\log p}{p} \rightarrow \infty$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

*Remark 7.10.* Let us illustrate Theorem 7.1. We have the following table, in which  $\Phi_n$  denotes the classical modular polynomial of level  $n$  and  $H$  is the non-logarithmic height  $H(\sum_I a_I X^I) = \max_I |a_I|$ :

Level	$H(\Phi_n)$
32	$2^{12} \cdot 3^{144} \cdot 5^{144} \cdot 11^{72} \cdot 17^{18} \cdot 23^{36} \cdot 29^{36} \cdot 47^{27} \cdot 53^{18} \cdot 59^{18} \cdot 71^9 \cdot 83^{18} \cdot 89^{18}$
41	$2^{684} \cdot 3^{126} \cdot 5^{126} \cdot 11^{36} \cdot 17^{18} \cdot 23^{27} \cdot 29^{36} \cdot 41^3 \cdot 47^{18} \cdot 59^9 \cdot 71^{18} \cdot 107^9$
47	$2^{774} \cdot 3^{144} \cdot 5^{153} \cdot 11^{72} \cdot 17^{36} \cdot 23^{27} \cdot 29^{27} \cdot 41^9 \cdot 47^3 \cdot 89^{18} \cdot 113^{18} \cdot 137^9$
53	$2^{900} \cdot 3^{162} \cdot 5^{162} \cdot 11^{54} \cdot 17^{54} \cdot 23^{18} \cdot 29^{18} \cdot 41^{18} \cdot 47^{18} \cdot 53^3 \cdot 59^9 \cdot 83^{18} \cdot 107^{18} \cdot 131^{18}$
59	$2^{972} \cdot 3^{180} \cdot 5^{198} \cdot 11^{81} \cdot 17^{18} \cdot 23^{36} \cdot 29^{36} \cdot 41^{18} \cdot 47^{18} \cdot 53^{18} \cdot 59^3 \cdot 101^{18} \cdot 113^9 \cdot 149^{18} \cdot 173^9$

Level	$H(F_n)$	$\log(H(\Phi_n))/\log(H(F_n))$
32	$2 \cdot 5 \cdot 937 \cdot 1997 \cdot 5381$	51.4514292315...
41	$2^9 \cdot 3^4 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 41 \cdot 1459$	52.7001592098...
47	$3^4 \cdot 5 \cdot 47 \cdot 311 \cdot 337 \cdot 4129$	55.3569927370...
53	$2^3 \cdot 53 \cdot 843701 \cdot 2543873$	55.1097204607...
59	$2^2 \cdot 59 \cdot 127 \cdot 22369 \cdot 231573773$	54.3504335762...

*Remark 7.11.* One might be interested in comparing the  $q$ -series coefficients of  $j_5$  with those of  $j$ . Indeed, we have

$$j_5 = q^{-1/5} (1 + q - q^3 + q^5 + q^6 - q^7 - 2q^8 + 2q^{10} + 2q^{11} - q^{12} - 3q^{13} - q^{14} + 3q^{15} + 3q^{16} - 2q^{17} + \dots),$$

while

$$j = q^{-1} + 744 + 196884q + 21493760q^2 + 864299970q^3 + 20245856256q^4 + 333202640600q^5 + \dots,$$

so it seems that the  $q$ -coefficients of  $j_5$  are very small in comparison to those of  $j$ . Let us write  $q^{1/5}j_5 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n q^n$  and  $j = q^{-1} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n q^n$  with  $b_n, c_n \in \mathbf{Z}$ . One can adapt Rademacher's improvement of the Hardy-Littlewood circle method to obtain the (divergent) asymptotic expansion

$$(7.27) \quad c_n = \frac{2\pi}{5\sqrt{5n-1}} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_k(n)}{k} I_1 \left( \frac{4\pi}{25k} \sqrt{5n-1} \right)$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , where

$$I_1(u) = \int_{1-i\infty}^{1+i\infty} t^{-2} e^{t+u^2/4t} dt$$

is the  $I$  Bessel-function of order 1 and

$$A_k(n) = \sum_{\substack{h \in (\mathbf{Z}/5k\mathbf{Z})^\times \\ h \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i}{25k}(h+\bar{h}-5nh)}$$

with  $h\bar{h} \equiv 1 \pmod{25k}$ . By ‘‘divergent’’ expansion we mean that at any finite truncation the series (7.27) gives a genuine asymptotic expansion for  $c_n$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , and that we can prescribe an optimal cut-off point (depending on  $n$ ) for any particular  $n$ .

Using the well-known estimate

$$I_1(u) \sim \frac{e^u}{(2\pi u)^{1/2}}$$

as  $u \rightarrow \infty$  and taking the truncation at  $k = 1$  in (7.27) yields

$$(7.28) \quad c_n \sim \frac{\sqrt{2}}{(5n-1)^{3/4}} \cos \left( \frac{2\pi}{25}(5n-2) \right) e^{\frac{4\pi}{25}\sqrt{5n-1}}.$$

It is *remarkable* how accurately this asymptotic on the first-term truncation approximates  $c_n$ . Indeed, we have the following table:



$n$	$c_n$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{(5n-1)^{3/4}} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{25}(5n-2)\right) e^{\frac{4\pi}{25}\sqrt{5n-1}}$
10	2	1.98558
21	5	4.90972
32	-7	-7.13225
43	-37	-37.055
54	-15	-14.4614
65	131	131.995
76	204	204.887
87	-216	-215.274
98	-875	-875.131
109	-279	-280.932
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$
150	7939	7932.7
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$
197	-23562	-23555.2

It is worth comparing the asymptotic formula (7.28) for  $c_n$  with that for  $b_n$ :

$$c_n \sim \frac{\sqrt{2}}{(5n)^{3/4}} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{25}(5n-2)\right) e^{\frac{4\pi}{5\sqrt{5}}\sqrt{n}},$$

$$b_n \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}n^{3/4}} e^{4\pi\sqrt{n}},$$

so

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log b_n}{\log c_n} = 5\sqrt{5} = 11.1803398874989\dots$$

This explains why the coefficients of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j$  seem to be so much larger than the coefficients of the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$ .

### 8. RADICAL FORMULAS FOR SINGULAR VALUES IN $\mathbf{R}$

An interesting question in the context of radical formulas for singular values of  $j_5$  (or of Ramanujan's  $F$ ) is whether such formulas can be given inside of  $\mathbf{R}$  when the singular value lies in  $\mathbf{R}$ .

**Definition 8.1.** An finite extension of subfields  $E \subseteq E'$  inside of  $\mathbf{R}$  is *solvable in real radicals* if there exists a finite tower

$$E = E_1 \subseteq E_2 \subseteq \dots \subseteq E_n$$

in  $\mathbf{R}$  with  $E' \subseteq E_n$  and  $E_i = E_{i-1}(a_i)$  with  $a_i^{d_i} \in E_{i-1}$  for  $1 < i \leq n$  and some positive integers  $d_i$ . A real algebraic number  $\alpha \in \mathbf{R}$  is *solvable in real radicals* if  $\mathbf{Q}(\alpha)/\mathbf{Q}$  is solvable in real radicals.

*Remark 8.2.* Despite appearances, this definition is a property of the abstract extension  $E'/E$ : it is independent of how  $E'$  is embedded in  $\mathbf{R}$ . Indeed, due to the existence and (non-canonical) uniqueness of real closures of real fields, and the evident fact that  $E'/E$  is an algebraic extension of real fields, we see that Definition 8.1 says exactly that  $E'$  admits an  $E$ -embedding into a radical tower in a real closure of  $E$ .

Pick  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  that is quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and assume  $j_5(\tau) \in \mathbf{R}$  (or equivalently, assume  $\tau$  is  $\Gamma(5)$ -equivalent to  $-\bar{\tau}$ ; the typical example is a purely imaginary  $\tau$ , which is to say  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$ ). Let  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$ , so  $K(j_5(\tau))/K$  is an abelian extension and clearly

$$(8.1) \quad [\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau)) : \mathbf{Q}] = [K(j_5(\tau)) : K].$$

The question we wish to address is whether or not  $j_5(\tau)$  is solvable in real radicals. Our analysis will only be applicable when  $K(j_5(\tau))$  is Galois over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and the description of the associated open subgroup in  $\mathbf{A}_K^\times/K^\times$  provided by Corollary 3.3 shows that this condition holds when  $\tau^2 \in \mathbf{Q}$ . The solvability of such real singular values in real radicals is quite rare, as the following theorem makes clear:

**Theorem 8.3.** *Let  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  be quadratic over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and assume  $\tau$  is  $\Gamma(5)$ -equivalent to  $-\bar{\tau}$ . If  $j_5(\tau) \in \mathbf{R}$  is solvable in real radicals then all odd prime factors of  $[\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau)) : \mathbf{Q}]$  are Fermat primes, and if  $[\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau)) : \mathbf{Q}]$  is a power of 2 then  $j_5(\tau)$  lies in a tower of quadratic extensions over  $\mathbf{Q}$  inside  $\mathbf{R}$ .*

*In particular, if  $\tau$  is a 5-unit and  $\mathbf{C}^\times/q\tau^2$  has CM by  $\mathcal{O}_K$ , then  $j_5(\tau)$  is solvable in real radicals only if the size of the the ray class group of conductor 5 for  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  is of the form  $2^e \prod_j p_j^{e_j}$  where the  $p_j$ 's are Fermat primes.*

The final part of the theorem follows from the rest because of (8.1) and the fact that the given additional conditions on  $\tau$  imply that  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau, j_5(\tau))$  is the ray class field of conductor 5 for  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  (by Corollary 5.7). In fact, the Fermat criterion on the size of the ray class group of conductor 5 may be replaced with the Fermat criterion for the usual class group because the ratio of the size of the two groups has only 2, 3, and 5 as possible prime factors. We also remark that the theorem is true for the classical  $j$ -function (with 5 replaced by 1 everywhere), using the same proof.

*Example 8.4.* A simple example where the necessary criterion of Theorem 8.3 is violated is  $\tau = \sqrt{-101}$ . Indeed, the ring of integers of  $\mathbf{Q}(\sqrt{-101})$  is  $\mathbf{Z}[\sqrt{-101}]$  and  $\sqrt{-101}$  is a 5-unit, so  $[\mathbf{Q}(j_5(\sqrt{-101})) : \mathbf{Q}]$  is the order of the the ray class group of conductor 5 for  $\mathbf{Q}(\sqrt{-101})$ . This group is  $\mathbf{Z}/4\mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z}/28\mathbf{Z}$ , and the prime 7 is not a Fermat prime. Thus,  $j_5(\sqrt{-101}) \in \mathbf{R}$  is not solvable in real radicals. Of course, it is solvable in complex radicals.

Other examples of the form  $\tau = \sqrt{-n}$  with squarefree  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $5 \nmid n$  (so  $\mathbf{Q}(\tau)$  has ring of integers  $\mathbf{Z}[\tau]$  with  $\tau$  a 5-unit) are  $n = 149, 173, 341, 349$  with the prime 7 intervening,  $n = 269, 389, 829, 1021$  with the prime 11 intervening, and  $n = 941, 1181, 2837, 3401$  with the prime 23 intervening.

In view of the preceding remarks, Theorem 8.3 is a consequence of the following general result (with  $K^+ = \mathbf{Q}$ ,  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\tau)$ ,  $L^+ = \mathbf{Q}(j_5(\tau))$ ,  $L = \mathbf{Q}(\tau, j_5(\tau))$ ):

**Theorem 8.5.** *Let  $K^+$  be a number field in  $\mathbf{R}$  that is solvable in real radicals over  $\mathbf{Q}$ , and let  $K$  be a quadratic extension of  $K^+$  in  $\mathbf{C}$  with  $K$  not contained in  $\mathbf{R}$ . Let  $L/K$  be a finite abelian extension inside of  $\mathbf{C}$  such that  $L/K^+$  is Galois. Let  $L^+ = L \cap \mathbf{R}$ , so  $[L : K] = [L^+ : K^+]$  and  $L = K \otimes_{K^+} L^+$ .*

*If  $[L : K]$  is a power of 2, then  $L^+/K^+$  is a tower of quadratic extensions. If the real number field  $L^+$  is solvable in real radicals over  $K^+$  (or, equivalently, over  $\mathbf{Q}$ ), then all odd prime factors of  $[L : K]$  are Fermat primes.*

This purely algebraic theorem can be formulated and proved in terms of a choice of real closure of a real number field  $K^+$ , but we prefer to work with the more concrete (but operationally equivalent) language of subfields of  $\mathbf{R}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\Gamma = \text{Gal}(L/K)$ . We may assume  $\Gamma \neq \{1\}$ . Since we have a short exact sequence

$$1 \rightarrow \Gamma \rightarrow \text{Gal}(L/K^+) \rightarrow \text{Gal}(K/K^+) \rightarrow 1$$

with  $\Gamma$  abelian, we may view  $\Gamma$  as a finite-length nonzero  $\mathbf{Z}[\text{Gal}(K/K^+)]$ -module. Since  $\text{Gal}(K/K^+)$  has order 2, by decomposing  $\Gamma$  into its primary components it is clear that we can find a  $\text{Gal}(K/K^+)$ -stable filtration by subgroups

$$1 = \Gamma_0 \subseteq \Gamma_1 \subseteq \cdots \subseteq \Gamma_n = \Gamma$$

such that  $[\Gamma_i : \Gamma_{i-1}] = q_i$  is prime for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . We may clearly arrange for  $q_1$  to be any prime factor  $q$  of the order of the abelian group  $\Gamma$ .

Let  $L_i$  be the fixed field of  $\Gamma_i$  in  $L$ , so the  $L_i$ 's are a decreasing chain of subfields of  $L$  containing the subfield  $K \not\subseteq \mathbf{R}$  and each  $L_i$  is Galois over  $K^+$ . Thus,  $L_i^+ = L_i \cap \mathbf{R}$  is a decreasing chain of subfields of  $L^+$  that contain  $K^+$ , and clearly  $K \otimes_{K^+} L_i^+ \rightarrow L_i$  is an isomorphism. Thus,  $[L_{i-1}^+ : L_i^+] = q_i$  for all  $i$  and  $L_i$  is Galois over  $L_{i'}^+$  for  $i' \geq i$ . If  $[L : K]$  is a power of 2 then  $q_i = 2$  for all  $i$  and we have therefore expressed  $L^+$  as a tower of quadratic extensions of  $K^+$ . This settles the existence result when  $[L : K]$  is a power of 2. For the proof that when such a formula exists then all odd prime factors of  $[L : K]$  are Fermat primes, we may now assume that  $q_1 = q$  is any choice of odd prime factor of  $[L : K]$  and we want to show that it is a Fermat prime. We can rename  $L_1^+$  as  $K^+$  (note that  $L_1^+/\mathbf{Q}$  is solvable in real radicals!) and  $L_1$  as  $K$  to reduce to the case when  $[L : K] = [L^+ : K^+]$  is equal to  $q$ .

Let

$$K^+ = E_0 \subseteq E_1 \subseteq \cdots \subseteq E_m$$

be a tower of subfields of  $\mathbf{R}$  such that  $L^+ \subseteq E_m$  and  $E_i = E_{i-1}(a_i)$  with  $a_i^{d_i} = b_i \in E_{i-1}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and positive integers  $d_i$ . Obviously we can assume that each  $d_i = p_i$  is prime and that  $[E_i : E_{i-1}] > 1$  for all  $i$  (so  $b_i \neq 0$  for all  $i$ ). We can also assume that  $L^+$  is not contained in  $E_{m-1}$  (the case  $L^+ = K^+$  is trivial). For each  $i$ , we claim that  $[E_i : E_{i-1}] = p_i$ . This is obvious if  $p_i = 2$ , so suppose  $p_i$  is odd. If  $[E_i : E_{i-1}] < p_i$  then  $T^{p_i} - b_i \in E_{i-1}[T]$  is reducible, and so  $b_i$  has a  $p_i$ th root  $\beta \in E_{i-1}$  (see [15, Thm. 9.1, Ch. VI]). However,  $a_i \in E_i - E_{i-1}$  is also a  $p_i$ th root of  $b_i$ , so the ratio  $a_i/\beta \in E_i$  is a nontrivial  $p_i$ th root of unity. Since  $p_i$  is odd, this contradicts the fact that  $E_i$  is a subfield of  $\mathbf{R}$ . Thus,  $[E_i : E_{i-1}] = p_i$  for all  $i$ .

Since  $[L^+ : K^+] = q$  is prime and  $L^+$  is not contained in  $E_{m-1}$ , the inclusion  $K^+ \subseteq L^+ \cap E_{m-1}$  must be an equality. Consider the composite  $L^+E_{m-1}$  inside of  $E_m$ . This is an intermediate extension over  $E_{m-1}$  and is strictly larger than  $E_{m-1}$ , so since  $[E_m : E_{m-1}] = p_m$  is prime we obtain  $L^+E_{m-1} = E_m$ . Thus,  $[L^+E_{m-1} : E_{m-1}] = p_m$ . However, we claim that  $L^+ \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1} \rightarrow L^+E_{m-1}$  is an isomorphism, and hence  $p_m = [L^+ : K^+] = q$ . To prove this isomorphism assertion it is enough to check after applying  $K \otimes_{K^+} (\cdot)$  to both sides. We have  $K \otimes_{K^+} L^+ = L$  since  $K/K^+$  is a non-real quadratic extension, and similarly  $K \otimes_{K^+} (L^+E_{m-1}) = KL^+E_{m-1} = LE_{m-1}$  (composites formed inside  $\mathbf{C}$ ). Thus, we wish to show that the surjection

$$L \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1} \twoheadrightarrow LE_{m-1}$$

is an isomorphism, and since  $L/K^+$  is a Galois extension satisfying

$$L \cap E_{m-1} = (L \cap \mathbf{R}) \cap E_{m-1} = L^+ \cap E_{m-1} = K^+$$

it follows (see Lemma 8.7 below) that  $L \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1}$  is a field. This establishes the isomorphism claim.

We have proved that  $E_m = L^+ \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1}$ , so by applying  $K \otimes_{K^+} (\cdot)$  we see that

$$KE_m = K \otimes_{K^+} E_m = L \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1} = L \otimes_K (K \otimes_{K^+} E_{m-1}) = L \otimes_K (KE_{m-1})$$

is a degree- $q$  extension of  $KE_{m-1}$  that is Galois (since  $L/K$  is Galois) and generated by adjoining a  $q$ th root of a nonzero element  $b_m \in E_{m-1}^\times \subseteq KE_{m-1}$  (since  $E_m = E_{m-1}(a_m)$ ). Hence,  $KE_m$  must contain a primitive  $q$ th root of unity! Thus,  $KE_m \cap \mathbf{R} = E_m$  must contain  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_q)^+$ . However, our initial hypothesis that  $K^+$  be solvable in real radicals over  $\mathbf{Q}$  implies the same for  $E_m$ , and hence  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_q)^+$  is solvable in real radicals over  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Since  $[\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_q)^+ : \mathbf{Q}] = (q-1)/2$ , it is therefore enough to show that a *Galois* extension of  $\mathbf{Q}$

inside of  $\mathbf{R}$  that is solvable in real radicals must have degree over  $\mathbf{Q}$  equal to a power of 2. This is a special case of the next theorem (with  $E = \mathbf{Q}$  and  $K = \mathbf{Q}(\zeta_q)^+$ ).  $\blacksquare$

**Theorem 8.6.** *Let  $E$  be a field, and let  $K/E$  be a finite Galois extension. Assume that  $[K : E]$  has order divisible by a prime  $p$ . If  $F$  is a radical tower over  $E$  into which  $K$  admits an  $E$ -embedding, then either  $F$  contains a root of unity of order  $p$  (so the characteristic is distinct from  $p$ ) or  $F$  contains a primitive root of unity of odd prime order. In particular, if  $E$  is a real field and  $[K : E]$  is odd and  $> 1$ , then  $F$  is not a real field.*

Some aspects of the proof of this theorem will be similar to steps in the proof of Theorem 8.5. However, the nature of the hypotheses are sufficiently different that it seems simpler to just repeat the similar steps and not to axiomatize the situation too much.

*Proof.* Since  $\text{Gal}(K/E) = [K : E]$  has order divisible by  $p$ , there must be a subgroup of order  $p$ . Thus, there is an intermediate field  $E'$  between  $K$  and  $E$  with  $K/E'$  Galois of degree  $p$ . By using an  $E$ -embedding of  $K$  into  $F$ , we may rename  $E'$  as  $E$  to reduce to the case  $[K : E] = p$ .

We may express the radical tower  $F/E$  in steps

$$E = E_0 \subseteq E_1 \subseteq \cdots \subseteq E_n = F$$

where  $E_{i+1} = E_i(a_i)$  with  $a_i^{p_i} \in E_i$  for primes  $p_i$ . We may certainly assume  $[E_{i+1} : E_i] > 1$  for all  $i$  without loss of generality. Fix an  $E$ -embedding of  $K$  into  $F$ . Consider the intersection  $K \cap E_{n-1}$ , a field between  $K$  and  $E$ . Since  $[K : E]$  is prime, either  $K \cap E_{n-1} = K$  or  $K \cap E_{n-1} = E$ . If the former, then  $K \subseteq E_{n-1}$  so we can rename  $E_{n-1}$  as  $F$  and induct on  $n$  (once we handle the case  $n = 1!$ ). On the other hand, if  $K \cap E_{n-1} = E$  then consider the composite field  $KE_{n-1}$  inside of  $F$ . This is finite Galois over  $E_{n-1}$  of degree  $> 1$ . The following well-known lemma (using  $k = E$ ,  $F_0 = E_{n-1}$ ) ensures that  $[KE_{n-1} : E_{n-1}] = [K : E] = p$ .

**Lemma 8.7.** *Let  $F/k$  be an extension of fields and let  $K/k$  be a subextension that is finite Galois. Let  $F_0/k$  be another intermediate extension with  $K \cap F_0 = k$ . The natural map  $K \otimes_k F_0 \rightarrow KF_0$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Let  $y$  be a primitive element for  $K/k$ , say with minimal polynomial  $f \in k[T]$ . Note that  $K/k$  is a splitting field of  $f$  over  $k$ . Since  $KF_0/F_0$  is generated by a root of  $f$ , it is necessary and sufficient to prove that  $f \in F_0[T]$  is irreducible. Suppose  $f = gh$  is a monic factorization of  $f$  over  $F_0$ ; it suffices to show that this factorization is trivial. Since  $f$  splits over  $K$  and hence over  $F$ , when we consider the factorization  $f = gh$  in  $F[T]$  we see that  $g$  and  $h$  split over  $F$  and hence their coefficients may be expressed as  $\mathbf{Z}$ -polynomials in the roots of  $f$  (recall that  $g$  and  $h$  were chosen to be monic). But the roots of  $f$  in  $F$  lie in  $K$ , so the coefficients of  $g$  and  $h$  in  $F$  lie in  $K$ . Hence,  $g$  and  $h$  as elements in  $F[T]$  lie in  $(K \cap F_0)[T] = k[T]$ , so our factorization of  $f$  takes place in  $k[T]$ . But  $f$  is irreducible in  $k[T]$ , so our factorization is indeed trivial.  $\blacksquare$

Thus, by renaming  $E_{n-1}$  as  $E$  and  $KE_{n-1}$  as  $K$ , we get to the special case  $n = 1$ , which is to say that  $F = E(a)$  with  $a^{p'} = b \in F^\times$  for some prime  $p'$  and  $K/E$  is an intermediate Galois extension of prime degree  $p$ . We claim that either  $[F : E] = p'$  or else  $F = E(\zeta)$  with  $\zeta$  a primitive  $p'$ th root of unity (and the characteristic is distinct from  $p'$ ). Consider the polynomial  $T^{p'} - b$  in  $E[T]$ . If this is irreducible, then clearly  $F$  is  $E$ -isomorphic to  $E[T]/(T^{p'} - b)$  and hence  $[F : E] = p'$ . On the other hand, if  $T^{p'} - b$  is reducible over  $E$  then  $b = c^{p'}$  for some  $c \in E^\times$  (by [15, Thm. 9.1, Ch. VI]). In this case,  $\zeta = a/c$  is a nontrivial  $p'$ th root of unity (since  $a \notin E$ , as  $F = E(a)$  with  $[F : E] > 1$ ). In particular, the characteristic is not equal to  $p'$  and  $F = E(\zeta)$  is generated by a primitive  $p'$ th root of unity.

If  $[F : E] = p'$ , then since  $p = [K : E]$  must divide  $[F : E]$ , we get  $p' = p$  and  $K = F$ , so in fact  $F/E$  is a finite Galois extension of degree  $p$ . However, this extension is generated by extracting a  $p$ th root  $a$  of an element  $b \in E^\times$ , so the characteristic cannot be  $p$ . Since  $[F : E] > 1$ , the minimal polynomial of  $a$  over  $E$  is a factor of  $T^p - b \in E[T]$  with degree larger than 1 and this factor must split over the normal extension  $F$ . Any other root in  $F$  for this factor has to have the form  $a\zeta$  with  $\zeta \neq 1$  a  $p$ th root of unity. Hence, we deduce that  $F$  contains a primitive  $p$ th root of unity when  $[F : E] = p'$ . But in the case  $[F : E] \neq p'$  we must have

$F = E(\zeta)$  for a primitive  $p'$ th root of unity (with  $p'$  distinct from the characteristic), and  $K/E$  is a degree- $p$  subextension. Hence,  $[F : E] > 1$ , so  $p' > 2$ . Thus,  $F$  contains a root of unity of odd prime order.  $\blacksquare$

#### APPENDIX A. THE ACTION OF $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$ ON $j_5$

Choose  $N \geq 1$  and let  $\zeta \in \mathbf{C}^\times$  be a primitive  $N$ th root of unity. Since  $S = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  generate  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  and hence generate the quotient  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ , we can determine the action of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  on  $\mathbf{C}(X_\zeta(N))$  by determining the action of  $S$  and  $T$  on this function field. In genus-zero cases, it is enough to describe how  $S$  and  $T$  act on a rational parameter.

*Example A.1.* The rational parameter  $j_{5,\zeta}$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  is transformed under the action of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  according to a representation  $\rho_\zeta^{\mathrm{an}}$  of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  in  $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{CP}^1) \simeq \mathrm{PGL}_2(\mathbf{C})$ .

In order to better understand the representations  $\rho_\zeta^{\mathrm{an}}$  in  $\mathrm{Aut}(X_\zeta(N))$ , particularly their use in proving some classical identities with coefficients in  $\mathbf{Q}$  (and not only in  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)$ ), as we shall discuss in Appendix C for  $N = 5$ , it is convenient to develop a variant of  $\rho_\zeta^{\mathrm{an}}$  over  $\mathbf{Q}$  that recovers the  $\zeta$ -dependent construction  $\rho_\zeta^{\mathrm{an}}$  over  $\mathbf{C}$  (or over any field of characteristic 0 that splits  $X^N - 1$ ). The main point is to replace the constant group  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  with a non-constant finite étale symplectic group over  $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbf{Q}$ .

Fix  $N \geq 1$ . There is a canonical non-degenerate symplectic pairing of étale sheaves on  $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbf{Q}$

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : (\mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) \times (\mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mu_N$$

given by  $\langle (\zeta, a), (\zeta', a') \rangle = \zeta^{a'} \zeta'^{-a}$ . Let

$$G = \mathrm{Sp}(\mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Aut}(\mu_N \times \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$$

be the associated symplectic group, so  $G$  is a finite étale  $\mathbf{Q}$ -group. Over a splitting field  $K_N/\mathbf{Q}$  of  $X^N - 1$ , a choice of primitive  $N$ th root of unity  $\zeta \in K_N^\times$  identifies  $\mu_N$  with  $\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$  and carries  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  to the determinant form on  $(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^2$ , so this identifies  $G_{/K_N}$  with the constant group  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$ . Of course, changing  $\zeta$  changes this identification with  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  (in a manner that we shall make explicit shortly).

Functorially, for a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra  $R$  we can uniquely describe any point  $\gamma \in G(R)$  as  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$  where  $a, d \in (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times(R)$  are  $R$ -automorphisms of  $\mu_N$  and  $\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$  respectively,  $b \in \mu_N(R)$ , and  $c : \mu_N \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$  is an  $R$ -group map. In this description, the preservation of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  by  $\gamma$  says  $ad - c(b) = 1$  and (following the conventions preceding Remark 2.5) there is a canonical left action

$$(A.1) \quad \rho : G \times X_\mu(N) \rightarrow X_\mu(N)$$

over  $\mathbf{Q}$  given away from the cusps by

$$(\gamma, (E, \iota)) \mapsto (E, \iota \circ \gamma')$$

with  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} d & b \\ c & a \end{pmatrix}$  for  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ . We can also describe  $\rho$  as a map of smooth  $\mathbf{Q}$ -groups

$$\rho : G \rightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(N)),$$

where  $\mathbf{Aut}(Z)$  denotes the Aut-scheme of Grothendieck for any projective  $\mathbf{Q}$ -scheme  $Z$  (this is a quasi-projective  $\mathbf{Q}$ -group, and it is smooth by Cartier's theorem). The scheme-theoretic image  $\rho(G)$  is a finite étale  $\mathbf{Q}$ -subgroup of  $\mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(N))$ , and since  $G \rightarrow \rho(G)$  is a finite étale surjection we see that a field splitting  $G$  also splits  $\rho(G)$ .

Upon extending scalars to a splitting field  $K_N/\mathbf{Q}$  of  $X^N - 1$  and using a primitive  $N$ th root of unity  $\zeta \in K_N^\times$  to identify  $\mu_N$  and  $\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}$ , we may describe  $\rho_{/K_N}$  as a map of smooth  $K_N$ -groups

$$\rho_\zeta : \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) = G_{/K_N} \rightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X_\zeta(N))_{/K_N},$$

and since the source group is a constant group we can equivalently consider  $\rho_\zeta$  as a map of ordinary groups (of  $K_N$ -points)

$$\rho_\zeta : \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_\zeta(N)).$$

Upon choosing an embedding  $\iota : K_N \hookrightarrow \mathbf{C}$ , this recovers  $\rho_{\iota(\zeta)}^{\mathrm{an}}$  as in Example A.1.

If  $\zeta' = \zeta^e$  for  $e \in (\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})^\times$  then by using  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta} : X_\zeta(N)/_{K_N} \simeq X_{\zeta'}(N)/_{K_N}$  as in Remark 2.5 (this isomorphism respects the canonical identifications of source and target with  $X_\mu(N)/_{K_N}$ ) we see that  $\rho_\zeta$  is carried to  $\rho_{\zeta'} \circ c_e$  where  $c_e$  denotes the conjugation action

$$\gamma \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & e \end{pmatrix} \cdot \gamma \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

on  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})$  (here we are using the intervention of  $\gamma \mapsto \gamma'$  in the definition of  $\rho$  and the fact that  $(\gamma_1 \gamma_2)' = \gamma_2' \gamma_1'$ ).

Under the natural action of  $\mathrm{Gal}(K_N/\mathbf{Q})$  on

$$\mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_\mu(N)/_{K_N}) = \mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(N))(K_N),$$

any  $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(K_N/\mathbf{Q})$  gives rise to an isomorphism

$$[\sigma] : \mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_\zeta(N)/_{K_N}) = \mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(N))(K_N) \xrightarrow{\sigma} \mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(N))(K_N) = \mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_{\sigma(\zeta)}(N)/_{K_N})$$

that is exactly intertwining with  $\alpha_{\sigma(\zeta), \zeta}$ . Thus, by looking back at the original definition of the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -group  $G$  we conclude that

$$(A.2) \quad [\sigma] \circ \rho_\zeta = \rho_{\sigma(\zeta)} = \rho_\zeta \circ c_{e^{-1}}.$$

We conclude the first part of:

**Theorem A.2.** *The subgroup  $\rho_\zeta(\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/N\mathbf{Z})) \subseteq \mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_\zeta(N)) = \mathrm{Aut}_{K_N}(X_\mu(N)/_{K_N})$  is independent of  $\zeta$  and is  $\mathrm{Gal}(K_N/\mathbf{Q})$ -stable.*

When  $N = 5$  and we identify  $X_\mu(5)$  with  $\mathbf{P}_\mathbf{Q}^1$  by means of  $j_{5, \mu}$  and thereby identify  $\mathbf{Aut}(X_\mu(5))$  with  $\mathrm{PGL}_2/\mathbf{Q}$ , the resulting subgroups

$$\rho_\zeta(\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})) \subseteq \mathrm{PGL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5))$$

are independent of the choice of primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta$  in  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)$  and this subgroup is  $\mathrm{Gal}(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)/\mathbf{Q})$ -stable.

*Proof.* The only issue that requires clarification for the second part is that the classical action of  $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)/\mathbf{Q})$  on  $\mathrm{PGL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5))$  agrees with the “base change” action denoted  $[\sigma]$  above that rested on the functorial description of  $\mathrm{PGL}_2$  as the automorphism scheme of  $\mathbf{P}_\mathbf{Q}^1 = X_\mu(5)$  (where this final equality is defined by means of  $j_{5, \mu} \in \mathbf{Q}(X_\mu(5))$ ). This agreement comes down to the evident fact that the standard identification of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(k)/k^\times$  with  $\mathrm{Aut}_k(\mathbf{P}_k^n)$  for a field  $k$  carries the  $\mathrm{Aut}(k)$ -action on matrices over to the base-change action on  $k$ -automorphisms of the  $k$ -scheme  $\mathbf{P}_k^n$ .  $\blacksquare$

For a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ , we shall now describe the images of  $S = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  in  $\mathrm{PGL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$  under  $\rho_\zeta^{\mathrm{an}}$  (cf. [7, vol. 2, p. 382]).

**Theorem A.3.** *The action of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $\mathbf{C}(X_\zeta(5))$  satisfies*

$$(A.3) \quad Tj_{5, \zeta} = \zeta^{-1}j_{5, \zeta} \quad Sj_{5, \zeta} = \frac{-(\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})j_{5, \zeta} + 1}{j_{5, \zeta} + (\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $K \subseteq \mathbf{C}$  be the splitting field of  $X^5 - 1$ . The moduli-theoretic approach over  $\mathrm{Spec} K$  shows that  $Tj_{5, \zeta}$  and  $Sj_{5, \zeta}$  must be degree-1 rational functions in  $j_{5, \zeta}$  over  $K$ , and an application of (A.2) and the identity  $\alpha_{\zeta', \zeta}^*(j_{5, \zeta'}) = j_{5, \zeta}$  ensure that these rational functions must be compatible with change in  $\zeta$  in the sense that if

$$\rho_\zeta(g)(j_{5, \zeta}) = \frac{a_\zeta j_{5, \zeta} + b_\zeta}{c_\zeta j_{5, \zeta} + d_\zeta}$$

for

$$M_\zeta = \begin{pmatrix} a_\zeta & b_\zeta \\ c_\zeta & d_\zeta \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PGL}_2(K)$$

then for any  $\sigma \in \text{Gal}(K/\mathbf{Q})$  we have  $\sigma(M_\zeta) = M_{\sigma(\zeta)}$  in  $\text{PGL}_2(K)$ . Thus, it is enough to prove the result for a single choice of  $\zeta$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ .

We shall now choose a connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and let  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  with  $i = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$ ; via  $\pi_\zeta$  this lifts the  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ -action on  $X_\zeta(5)$  to the standard action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $\mathfrak{H}$  and carries  $j_{5,\zeta}$  back to  $j_5$ . Hence,  $T$  and  $S$  lift through  $\pi_\zeta$  to the respective automorphisms  $[T] : \tau \mapsto \tau + 1$  and  $[S] : \tau \mapsto -1/\tau$  on  $\mathfrak{H}$ . The first relation in (A.3) is therefore obvious on  $\mathfrak{H}$  via the  $q$ -expansion of  $j_5$  at  $\infty$  (4.8).

For the second relation, observe that (4.3) and (4.5) give

$$([S]^* j_5)(\tau) = j_5(-1/\tau) = \frac{\kappa(0, \frac{2}{5})\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, -\frac{2}{5})\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{2}{5})\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{2}{5})\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{2}{5})}{\kappa(0, \frac{1}{5})\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{1}{5})\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{5})}$$

for  $\tau \in \mathfrak{H}$ . Now apply (4.6) to expand this as a  $q$ -series on  $\mathfrak{H}$ . One finds

$$([S]^* j_5)(\tau) = -(\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2}) + q_\tau^{1/5}(3 + \zeta + \zeta^{-1}) + \dots,$$

and since

$$j_5(\tau) = q_\tau^{-1/5} + q_\tau^{4/5} - q_\tau^{14/5} + \dots,$$

it is not hard to deduce that

$$\frac{3 + \zeta + \zeta^{-1}}{Sj_{5,\zeta} + (\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})} - j_{5,\zeta}$$

is a meromorphic function on  $X_\zeta(5)$  with no poles. It is therefore a constant. Inspection of the  $q$ -series at  $\infty$  shows that this constant is  $\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2}$ , and the proof of the theorem is complete upon simplification.  $\blacksquare$

*Remark A.4.* It is now an easy matter to prove Ramanujan's evaluation of  $F(i)$  for a primitive 4th root of unity  $i$  in  $\mathbf{C}$ , without requiring Watson's identity (1.3). Indeed,  $i$  is fixed by  $\tau \mapsto -1/\tau$ , so we can use (A.3) with  $\zeta = e^{\pm 2\pi i/5}$  to obtain

$$j_5(i) = \frac{-(\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})j_5(i) + 1}{j_5(i) + (\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})};$$

either of the specific choices of  $\zeta$  ensure that  $\tau \mapsto -1/\tau$  on  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  lifts the  $S$ -action through  $\pi_\zeta$ . For these choices of  $\zeta$ , we have  $\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2} = -(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$  with  $\sqrt{5} > 0$ . The visibly positive  $j_5(i)$  is therefore the unique positive root of

$$X^2 - (1 + \sqrt{5})X - 1 = 0,$$

so  $F(i) = 1/j_5(i)$  is the unique positive root of  $Y^2 + (1 + \sqrt{5})Y - 1 = 0$ . This yields (1.1). We can also similarly evaluate  $F(\zeta_3)$  for a primitive 3rd root of unity  $\zeta_3 = (-1 \pm \sqrt{-3})/2$ , as  $\zeta_3$  is fixed by  $ST : \tau \mapsto -1/(\tau + 1)$ . The identity (1.2) may also be verified by these methods.

## APPENDIX B. VALUES AT CUSPS

To avoid confusion concerning how points in  $\mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Q})$  are mapped into a modular curve, and to ensure that the moduli-theoretic action of  $\text{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\zeta(5)$  lifts (via  $\pi_\zeta$ ) to the standard linear-fractional action, fix a connected component  $\mathfrak{H}$  in  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  and take  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  with  $i = \sqrt{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$ . We will identify  $\mathfrak{H}$  with the quotient of  $\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$  under negation, and so we will work with the modular curve  $X_\zeta(5)$  as a quotient of  $\mathfrak{H}$ . In particular, we consider  $c \in \mathbf{P}^1(\mathbf{Q})$  as representing a cusp by means of punctured neighborhoods taken in the horocycle topology on  $\mathfrak{H}$ . Using [19, Lemma 1.42], we get a set of representatives:

$$\{0, 2/9, 1/4, 2/7, 1/3, 2/5, 1/2, 5/8, 2/3, 3/4, 1, \infty\}.$$

The points 0, 5/8,  $\infty$ , and 2/5 are each  $\Gamma(5)$ -equivalent to their negatives, and hence at cusps represented by these points we can expect to get a formula for the value of  $j_5$  that is independent of the choice of  $\mathfrak{H}$ ; this cannot be expected (and indeed, does not happen) at the other cusps. There are two methods that we can use to evaluate  $j_5$  at the cusps. We can work algebraically via Theorem A.3 (this requires explicitly

computing a word in  $S$  and  $T$  that carries  $\infty$  to a chosen cusp) or we can work analytically with Klein forms. We shall present the analytic approach via Klein forms, and leave the computational details of the algebraic method to the interested reader.

Our list of transformation properties for Klein forms in §4 allows us to compute how the  $\kappa_a$ 's transform under the action of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ . Thus, via (4.7) we can compute the  $q$ -expansion for  $j_5$  at any cusp and we can thereby compute the value of  $j_5$  at each cusp. For example, the cusp  $2/9$  is taken to  $\infty$  by the matrix

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 \\ -9 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We apply (4.5) to the product (4.7) and employ the relation (4.3) together with (4.2) to obtain

$$j_5 \circ \alpha^{-1} = -\frac{\kappa_{(0, \frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{2}{5}, 0)} \kappa_{(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1}{5}, \frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{1}{5})}}{\kappa_{(0, \frac{1}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1}{5}, 0)} \kappa_{(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1}{5}, -\frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})}}.$$

Using (4.6), we find that for  $\tau \in \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R}$ ,

$$j_5 \circ \alpha^{-1}(\tau) = -(1 + \zeta_\tau^{-1}) + (1 + 3\zeta_\tau + \zeta_\tau^2)q_\tau^{1/5} + O(q_\tau^{2/5})$$

with  $\zeta_\tau = e^{2\pi i \tau/5}$ . Let us now take  $\tau \in \mathfrak{H}$ , so  $\zeta_\tau = \zeta = e^{2\pi i/5} \in \mathfrak{H}$ . We conclude that the value of  $j_5$  at the cusp represented (via  $\mathfrak{H}$ ) by  $2/9$  is  $-(1 + \zeta^{-1})$ . The computations for the other cusps are similar, and so we obtain the following table:

TABLE B.1

CUSP REPRESENTATIVE	0	2/9	1/4	2/7	1/3	2/5
VALUE OF $j_5$	$-(\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2})$	$-(1 + \zeta^{-1})$	$-(\zeta^{-2} + \zeta^{-1})$	$-(1 + \zeta^{-2})$	$-(\zeta^2 + \zeta^{-1})$	0
CUSP REPRESENTATIVE	1/2	5/8	2/3	3/4	1	$\infty$
VALUE OF $j_5$	$-(\zeta + \zeta^{-2})$	$-(\zeta + \zeta^{-1})$	$-(1 + \zeta^2)$	$-(1 + \zeta)$	$-(\zeta + \zeta^2)$	$\infty$

*Remark B.2.* Observe that the cusps 0,  $5/8$ ,  $\infty$ , and  $2/5$  represent  $\Gamma(5)$ -orbits that are invariant under negation, and the values of  $j_5$  at these cusps are independent of  $\mathfrak{H}$ , or equivalently are invariant under replacing  $\zeta = e^{2\pi i/5}$  with  $\zeta^{-1} = e^{-2\pi i/5}$  (as we knew they had to be). In contrast, at a pair of cusp representatives such as  $2/9$  and  $3/4$ , with  $3/4$  in the  $\Gamma(5)$ -orbit of  $-2/9$ , the values of  $j_5$  are related by replacing  $\zeta$  with  $\zeta^{-1}$ .

By Lemma 4.2, we can construct many meromorphic functions on  $X_\zeta(5)$ . Indeed, the construction of suitable finite subsets  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq (5^{-1}\mathbf{Z})^2$  and functions  $m : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  as in Lemma 4.2 requires nothing more than linear algebra. Given any such meromorphic function

$$f = \prod_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \kappa_a^{m(a)}$$

on  $X_\zeta(5)$ , we can readily determine the order of  $f$  at each of the 12 cusps of  $X_\zeta(5)$ , and it is clear from (4.6) that any such  $f$  has divisor supported on the cusps of  $X_\zeta(5)$ .

Explicitly, the product formula (4.6) tells us  $f(\tau) = q_\tau^d(1 + \dots)$ , where

$$d = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{(a_1, a_2) \in \mathcal{A}} (a_1^2 - a_1) m(a_1, a_2).$$



Now let  $g_c \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  take the cusp  $c$  to  $\infty$ , and write  $g_c = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix}$ . The order of  $f$  at  $c$  must be

$$(B.1) \quad \frac{1}{2} \sum_{(a_1, a_2) \in \mathcal{A}} ((a_1\alpha + a_2\gamma \bmod 1)^2 - (a_1\alpha + a_2\gamma \bmod 1))m(a_1, a_2).$$

In Table B.1, we have listed the value of  $j_5$  at each of the cusps of  $X_\zeta(5)$ , so for any cusp  $c$  we can explicitly write down the function

$$(B.2) \quad \varphi_c = \begin{cases} (j_5 - j_5(c))^{-1} & \text{if } c \neq \infty \\ j_5 & \text{if } c = \infty, \end{cases}$$

and since  $\mathbf{C}(X_\zeta(5)) = \mathbf{C}(j_5)$  we see that  $\varphi_c$  has a simple pole at  $c$  and no other poles. Using these functions  $\varphi_c$ , the proof of any given modular identity is reduced to a finite  $q$ -series computation.

*Example B.3.* We illustrate the preceding considerations by proving the identity (6.14). By Theorem 6.9 we know that

$$f = j_5(\tau/5)^5 = \left( \frac{\kappa(\frac{2}{5}, 0)}{\kappa(\frac{1}{5}, 0)} \right)^5$$

is a rational function of  $j_5$ , though this also follows from Lemma 4.2 and Theorem 4.3. We find that  $f$  has simple poles at the cusps  $\infty$ ,  $1/4$ ,  $1/3$ ,  $1/2$ ,  $1$ , and simple zeroes at  $2/9$ ,  $2/7$ ,  $2/5$ ,  $2/3$ ,  $3/4$ . Thus, by Table B.1,

$$\frac{f}{j_5} \cdot \frac{(j_5 + \zeta^{-2} + \zeta^{-1})(j_5 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^{-1})(j_5 + \zeta^{-2} + \zeta)(j_5 + \zeta^2 + \zeta)}{(j_5 + 1 + \zeta^{-1})(j_5 + 1 + \zeta)(j_5 + 1 + \zeta^{-2})(j_5 + 1 + \zeta^2)}$$

is constant. Evaluation at  $\infty$  shows this constant is 1. Upon simplification we obtain

$$f = j_5 \cdot \frac{j_5^4 + 3j_5^3 + 4j_5^2 + 2j_5 + 1}{j_5^4 - 2j_5^3 + 4j_5^2 - 3j_5 + 1}.$$

### APPENDIX C. COMPUTING $F_n(X, Y)$

For any  $n \geq 1$  relatively prime to 5, in §6 we proved the existence and uniqueness of a primitive polynomial  $F_n \in \mathbf{Z}[X, Y]$  such that  $F_n$  is absolutely irreducible over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and  $F_n$  is an algebraic relation satisfied by the functions  $j_5(\tau)$  and  $j_5(n\tau)$ . We now turn to the task of explicitly computing  $F_n(X, Y)$  for such  $n$ .

Klein [7, vol. 2, pp. 137–151] worked out  $F_n(X, Y)$  for  $n \leq 11$  and  $n = 13$  with  $\gcd(n, 5) = 1$  using invariant theory and linear algebra on  $q$ -expansions. Some of these modular correspondences have been re-proved in recent years by other methods (see for example [23]). In this section, we aim to illustrate that modern computers allow us to apply Klein's far superior techniques to efficiently compute  $F_n$  for many values of  $n$ . Throughout this section, we closely follow the methods of Klein [7, vol. 2] but we systematically work over  $\mathbf{Q}$  whenever possible (as this seems the best perspective for explaining why many of the polynomial-identity formulas we shall establish only involve  $\mathbf{Q}$ -coefficients).

We have seen in Appendix A that the action of the finite étale non-constant symplectic  $\mathbf{Q}$ -group  $G = \mathrm{Sp}(\mu_5 \times \mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  on  $X_\mu(5)$  together with the isomorphism  $j_{5, \mu} : X_\zeta(5) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{P}^1_{\mathbf{Q}}$  gives a projective representation

$$\rho : G \longrightarrow \mathrm{PGL}_{2/\mathbf{Q}}$$

as  $\mathbf{Q}$ -groups. We refer the reader to Appendix A for the description of  $\rho$  upon extending scalars to a field that splits  $X^5 - 1$ . By inspecting the definition of  $\rho$  (and working on geometric points), we see that  $\ker \rho$  is the order-2 center  $\mu_2$  of  $G$ .

**Theorem C.1.** *The projective representation  $\rho$  lifts uniquely to a representation*

$$\tilde{\rho} : G \rightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2/\mathbf{Q},$$

*and this representation is faithful. This uniqueness persists upon any extension of the ground field.*

Of course, upon extending scalars to a field that splits  $X^5 - 1$  and picking a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta$  we can deduce from the theorem (and Theorem A.2) that the ordinary representation

$$\rho_\zeta : \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{PGL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$$

uniquely lifts to a representation

$$\tilde{\rho}_\zeta : \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$$

that is moreover faithful and has image that is both independent of  $\zeta$  and Galois-stable.

*Proof.* We begin by giving a constructive proof of existence by means of modular forms, as this will be used later. The functorial left action of  $G$  on  $X_\mu(5)$  lifts to an action on the universal generalized elliptic curve  $f : E \rightarrow X_\mu(5)$ . Whereas the kernel of  $\rho$  is the center  $\mu_2$  in  $G$ , clearly  $\mu_2$  actions by negation on the universal elliptic curve.

The pushforward  $\omega = \omega_{E/X_\mu(5)}$  of the relative dualizing sheaf is a line bundle on  $X_\mu(5)$  and its formation commutes with arbitrary change of base on  $X_\mu(5)$ , so we get an action of  $G$  on each tensor power  $\omega^{\otimes k}$  covering the action on  $X_\mu(5)$  for every  $k \geq 0$ . We thereby get a representation of  $G$  on the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -model

$$(C.1) \quad M_k = \mathrm{H}^0(X_\mu(5), \omega^{\otimes k})$$

for the space of weight- $k$  modular forms of full level 5.

Let  $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow X_\mu(5)$  be the reduced degree-12 divisor of cusps of  $X_\mu(5)$ . The Kodaira–Spencer isomorphism over  $Y_\mu(5)$  induces an isomorphism of sheaves on  $X_\mu(5)$

$$(C.2) \quad \omega^{\otimes 2} \simeq \Omega_{X_\mu(5)}^1(\mathcal{C}).$$

Since  $X_\mu(5) \simeq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$ , we know that  $\Omega_{X_\mu(5)/\mathbf{Q}}^1$  has degree  $-2$ , and since  $\mathcal{C}$  has degree 12 we conclude from (C.1) and (C.2) that  $\omega$  has degree 5 and that  $\dim M_k = 5k + 1$  for all  $k \geq 0$ .

**Lemma C.2.** *The subspace  $V \subseteq M_5$  of cusp forms of level 5 and weight 5 with  $q$ -expansion coefficients in  $\mathbf{Q}$  at  $\infty$  and vanishing to order at least 2 along  $\mathcal{C}$  is 2-dimensional,  $G$ -stable, and irreducible.*

*A  $\mathbf{Q}$ -basis for  $V$  is*

$$(C.3) \quad X_a = \left( \kappa_{(\frac{1+a}{5}, 0)} \kappa_{(\frac{1+a}{5}, \frac{1}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1+a}{5}, \frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1+a}{5}, -\frac{2}{5})} \kappa_{(\frac{1+a}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})} \right)^{-1},$$

for  $a = 0, 1$ . Moreover,  $X_a$  has the  $q$ -product expansion

$$(C.4) \quad X_a = q^{(2+a)/5} \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 - q^{5k})(1 - q^k)^9 \prod_{\substack{k>0 \\ k \equiv \pm(2-a) \pmod{5}}} (1 - q^k)$$

for  $a = 0, 1$ .

*Proof.* By our calculations above, for a  $G$ -stable effective divisor  $D$  on  $X_\mu(5)$  we see that the  $G$ -stable subspace  $\mathrm{H}^0(X_\mu(5), \omega^{\otimes 5}(-D))$  in  $M_5$  has dimension  $25 - \deg(D) + 1$ . The  $j$ -map  $X_\mu(5) \rightarrow X(1)$  is  $G$ -equivariant with fibers of order  $60 = |\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})/\{\pm 1\}|$  away from  $0, 1728, \infty \in X(1)$  and fibers of orders 30, 20, and 12 over  $0, 1728, \infty \in X(1)$  respectively, and the only pair of such orders that add up to 24 is  $12+12$ . Thus, the only degree-24 effective  $G$ -invariant divisor on  $X_\mu(5)$  is  $2\mathcal{C}$ , and clearly  $V = \mathrm{H}^0(X_\mu(5), \omega^{\otimes 5}(-2\mathcal{C}))$  is a 2-dimensional  $G$ -stable subspace of  $M_5$ . It is irreducible because otherwise there would be a  $G$ -stable line and hence a copy of the trivial representation, yet the center  $\mu_2$  acts on  $M_5$  through negation and hence there is no trivial subrepresentation.

Lemma 4.2 shows that  $X_a$  is a modular form of weight 5 on  $\Gamma(5)$  for  $a = 0, 1$ , and (4.5) may be employed to expand  $X_0, X_1$  about each cusp to infer that  $X_0, X_1$  have zeroes along  $\mathcal{C}$  with order at least 2. Using (4.6), one finds that  $X_a$  has the  $q$ -product (C.4) for  $a = 0, 1$ , and it is clear from these  $q$ -expansions that  $X_0, X_1$  are linearly independent. By the  $q$ -expansion principle, these elements of  $\mathbf{C} \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} V$  lie in the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -subspace  $V \subseteq M_5$ , and hence  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  are a basis of  $V$ .  $\blacksquare$

Let  $\tilde{\rho} : G \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V)$  be the representation of  $G$  on  $V$ ; since  $G$  has no nontrivial 1-dimensional characters,  $\tilde{\rho}$  is a representation into  $\mathrm{SL}(V)$ . We have computed that the line bundle  $\mathcal{L} = \omega^{\otimes 5}(-2\mathcal{C})$  on  $X_\mu(5)$  has degree 1, and since  $X_\mu(5)$  is a projective line we therefore conclude that the basis  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  of  $V = \mathrm{H}^0(X_\mu(5), \mathcal{L})$  generates  $\mathcal{L}$ . Thus, the data  $(\mathcal{L}; X_0, X_1)$  defines a morphism

$$X_\mu(5) \rightarrow \mathbf{P}(V) = \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$$

over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and this must be an isomorphism; in fact, a check of  $q$ -series shows  $X_0/X_1 = j_{5,\mu}$ , so this isomorphism is exactly the one that is defined by  $j_{5,\mu}$ .<sup>1</sup> In this way we see that we have lifted the  $G$ -action on  $X_\mu(5)$  to an action on its homogeneous coordinate ring  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]$  with respect to the rational parameter  $j_{5,\mu}$ , and consequently we have lifted  $\rho$  to a representation into  $\mathrm{SL}_2$ . This lift is faithful because  $\ker \rho = \mu_2$  acts by negation on  $\omega$  over the trivial action on  $X_\mu(5)$  and so also acts by negation on odd tensor-powers of  $\omega$ .

For uniqueness of the lift it is enough to work over fields  $K$  that split  $X^5 - 1$  and to consider liftings of  $\rho_\zeta$  for  $\zeta \in K$  a primitive 5th root of unity. Let  $S$  and  $T$  be as in Appendix A.<sup>2</sup> Recalling the presentation

$$\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) = \langle S, T \mid T^5 = 1, S^2 = (ST)^3 = -1 \rangle,$$

lifting  $\rho_\zeta$  is equivalent to giving matrices  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(S)$  and  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(T)$  satisfying the relations  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(T)^5 = 1$  and  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(S)^2 = (\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(S)\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(T))^3 = -1$ . In Theorem A.3 we explicitly computed  $\rho_\zeta(S), \rho_\zeta(T) \in \mathrm{PGL}_2(K)$ . As we require  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta$  to lift  $\rho_\zeta$ , we see that our choices are

$$(C.5) \quad \tilde{\rho}_\zeta(T) = \pm \begin{pmatrix} \zeta^2 & 0 \\ 0 & \zeta^3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \tilde{\rho}_\zeta(S) = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \begin{pmatrix} \zeta^{-1} - \zeta & \zeta^{-2} - \zeta^2 \\ \zeta^{-2} - \zeta^2 & \zeta - \zeta^{-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where we take  $\sqrt{5} = \zeta + \zeta^{-1} - \zeta^2 - \zeta^{-2}$ . A short computation with the relations reveals that we must select the positive sign in both cases, and that this works (thereby giving a second existence proof that descends to  $\mathbf{Q}$  by uniqueness and Galois descent).  $\blacksquare$

Put  $M_n = \begin{pmatrix} n & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  and note that since  $(n, 5) = 1$ , conjugation by  $M_n$  induces an automorphism of  $G$  depending only  $n \bmod 5$ . Define the representation

$$\tilde{\rho}_n : G \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2/\mathbf{Q}$$

on points by the functorial recipe

$$\tilde{\rho}_n(g) = \tilde{\rho}(M_n g M_n^{-1}),$$

so in particular we have  $\tilde{\rho}_1 = \tilde{\rho}$ . For an extension  $K/\mathbf{Q}$  splitting  $X^5 - 1$  and a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in K^\times$ , we write  $\tilde{\rho}_{\zeta,n}$  to denote the representation of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) \simeq G(K)$  into  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$  corresponding to  $\tilde{\rho}_{n/K}$ .

In §6 we defined the polynomial  $F_n(X, Y)$  as the dehomogenization (with respect to  $(\infty, \infty)$ ) of a certain absolutely irreducible bihomogenous polynomial  $\tilde{F}_n(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1)$  whose zero-scheme  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}} \subseteq \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1 \times \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$  is the generic fiber of the scheme-theoretic image of the map

$$\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n : X(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(n)) \rightarrow X_\mu(5) \times_{\mathbf{Z}[1/5]} X_\mu(5)$$

<sup>1</sup>Throughout, Klein works with coordinates  $\zeta_1, \zeta_2$  satisfying  $\zeta_1/\zeta_2 = 1/j_5 = F$  and regards  $F$  as a rational parameter on  $X(5)$ . This convention seems somewhat at odds with the case of  $X(1)$ , where the classical rational parameter  $j$  has a simple pole at the cusp  $\infty$ . The function  $1/j_5$  in fact has a simple zero at  $\infty$ .

<sup>2</sup>We follow the standard conventions; see for example [18, p. 77]. Klein [7] reverses the roles of  $S$  and  $T$ .

over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$ . As we noted in the proof of Lemma 6.2, the Kroneckerian model  $Z_{5,n}$  over  $\mathbf{Z}[1/5]$  as in Definition 6.1 is the scheme-theoretic image of  $(\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n) \circ \phi$  for any automorphism  $\phi$  of  $X(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(N))$ .

**Lemma C.3.** *The action  $\rho \times \rho_n$  of  $G$  on  $X_\mu(5) \times_{\mathbf{Q}} X_\mu(5)$  restricts to an automorphism of  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}}$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to check this over a field  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)$  generated by a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta$ , over which we may identify  $X_\mu(5)$  with  $X_\zeta(5)$  and  $X(\Gamma_\mu(5), \Gamma_0(n))$  with  $X(\Gamma(5), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)}$ . For any  $\gamma \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ , let  $\bar{\gamma}$  denote the image of  $\gamma$  under the canonical map  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) = G(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$ . The diagram

$$(C.6) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X(\Gamma(5), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)} & \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n} & X_\zeta(5) \times X_\zeta(5) \\ \gamma \downarrow & & \downarrow \bar{\gamma} \times M_n \bar{\gamma} M_n^{-1} \\ X(\Gamma(5), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)} & \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_n \times \bar{\pi}'_n} & X_\zeta(5) \times X_\zeta(5) \end{array}$$

is readily seen to commute, where  $\gamma$  and  $\bar{\gamma}$  act (away from the cusps) as in (2.2). Thus, the action of  $G(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$  through  $\rho \times \rho_n$  is intertwined with a group action on  $X(\Gamma(5), \Gamma_0(n))_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)}$  and thus restricts to an action on the scheme-theoretic image  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}}$ .  $\blacksquare$

Let  $R \subseteq \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1] \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}[Y_0, Y_1]$  be the homogeneous coordinate of  $X_\mu(5) \times X_\mu(5)$ ; that is, it is the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -subalgebra generated by all bihomogeneous polynomials of bidegree  $(v, v)$  for  $v \geq 0$ . By the preceding lemma, the action of  $G$  on  $R$  through  $\tilde{\rho} \otimes \tilde{\rho}_n$  preserves the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -line spanned by the irreducible generator  $\tilde{F}_n(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1)$  of the ideal of  $Z_{5,n,\mathbf{Q}}$ . Since  $G$  has no 1-dimensional characters, we conclude that  $\tilde{F}_n$  is  $G$ -invariant with respect to  $\tilde{\rho} \otimes \tilde{\rho}_n$ .

To ease notation, let  $G(n)$  denote  $G$  equipped with its action on  $R$  through  $\tilde{\rho} \otimes \tilde{\rho}_n$ . Following Klein, we now determine polynomial generators for  $R^{G(n)}$  for each  $n \in (\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})^\times$ . Since  $\tilde{F}_n \in R^{G(n)}$ , in this way we will be able to compute  $\tilde{F}_n$  very efficiently.

**Lemma C.4.** *There is a map  $R^{G(n)} \rightarrow R^{G(-n)}$  given by*

$$(C.7) \quad f(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) \mapsto f(-X_1, X_0; Y_0, Y_1),$$

*and this map is an isomorphism.*

By this lemma, it suffices to determine generators for  $R^{G(n)}$  when  $n \equiv 1, 2 \pmod{5}$ .

*Proof.* We may extend scalars to  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)$  with  $\zeta$  a primitive 5th root of unity. Let  $\delta_n$  be the automorphism of  $X_\mu(5)$  defined by (6.2). Using the canonical isomorphism  $X_\zeta(5)_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)} \simeq X_\mu(5)_{\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)}$ , a short calculation shows

$$(\delta_2 \times M_n \delta_2^{-1} M_n^{-1}) \circ (g \times M_n g M_n^{-1}) \circ (g \times M_n \delta_2 M_n^{-1}) = g \times M_n \delta_2^{-1} g \delta_2 M_n^{-1} = g \times M_{-n} g M_{-n}^{-1}$$

as automorphisms of  $X_\zeta(5) \times X_\zeta(5)$  for any  $g \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z}) = G(\mathbf{Q}(\zeta))$ , and hence

$$(C.8) \quad (\tilde{\rho}_\zeta \otimes \tilde{\rho}_{\zeta, -n})(g) = (\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(\delta_2)^{-1} \otimes 1)(\tilde{\rho}_\zeta \otimes \tilde{\rho}_{\zeta, n})(g)(\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(\delta_2) \otimes 1).$$

By Corollary 5.5 we have  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(\delta_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  up to a sign ambiguity that is easily resolved by the proof of Theorem C.1, so  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta(\delta_2)$  is self-inverse up to a sign and hence (C.8) provides the desired map.  $\blacksquare$

The case  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$  is simpler than the case  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{5}$  because the action  $\tilde{\rho} \times \tilde{\rho}_n$  is the diagonal action of  $\tilde{\rho} = \tilde{\rho}_1$  for such  $n$ . Thus, we will first work out the case  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$ . Before we can determine the associated ring of invariants  $R^{G(1)} = R^G$ , we need some terminology and results from classical invariant theory (cf. [12, §7]).

Let  $\rho: \Gamma \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V)$  be an algebraic representation of a finite étale  $K$ -group on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$  over a field  $K$  of characteristic 0, and let  $K[V^*]$  be the symmetric algebra of the dual space  $V^*$ . For any positive integer  $r$  we let  $\Gamma$  act on  $K[V^{*\oplus r}] \simeq K[V^*]^{\otimes r}$  via the action  $\rho^{*\otimes r}$ , where  $\rho^*$  denotes the dual

right action of  $\Gamma$  on  $K[V^*]$ . For any  $s \geq r$ , the linear projection map  $\text{pr} : V^{\oplus s} \rightarrow V^{\oplus r}$  onto the first  $r$  copies of  $V$  gives a  $\Gamma$ -equivariant inclusion

$$(C.9) \quad K[V^{*\oplus r}] \hookrightarrow K[V^{*\oplus s}],$$

and in this way we will identify  $K[V^{*\oplus r}]$  as a subring of  $K[V^{*\oplus s}]$ .

**Definition C.5.** For each  $i, j$  with  $1 \leq i, j \leq s$ , the *polarization* operators  $\Delta_{ij} : K[V^{*\oplus s}] \rightarrow K[V^{*\oplus s}]$  are the linear maps defined by

$$(C.10) \quad \Delta_{ij} f(v_1, \dots, v_s) = \left. \frac{f(v_1, \dots, v_j + tv_i, \dots, v_s) - f(v_1, \dots, v_s)}{t} \right|_{t=0}$$

with  $v_j + tv_i$  in the  $j$ th component. The  $K$ -algebra generated by all  $\Delta_{ij}$  with  $1 \leq i, j \leq s$  will be denoted  $\mathcal{U}(s)$ .

The importance of the polarization algebra is that it sometimes allows us to construct  $K[V^{*\oplus s}]^\Gamma$  from  $K[V^{*\oplus r}]^\Gamma$  when  $s > r$ .

**Definition C.6.** Let  $\dim V = r \leq s$ , and for any ordered  $r$ -tuple  $1 \leq i_1 \leq \dots \leq i_r \leq s$  of integers let

$$[i_1, \dots, i_r] \in (V^{\oplus s})^* = V^{*\oplus s}$$

be the composition  $V^{\oplus s} \rightarrow \wedge^r V \xrightarrow{\det} K$ , where  $V^{\oplus s} \rightarrow \wedge^r V$  is given by

$$(v_1, \dots, v_s) \mapsto v_{i_1} \wedge v_{i_2} \wedge \dots \wedge v_{i_r}.$$

Observe that  $[i_1, \dots, i_r]$  is  $\text{SL}(V)$  invariant.

**Theorem C.7.** Let  $r = \dim V$  and suppose that  $\Gamma$  acts on  $V$  through  $\text{SL}(V)$ . Let  $S \subset K[V^{*\oplus(r-1)}]^\Gamma$  be a subset that generates  $K[V^{*\oplus(r-1)}]^\Gamma$  as a  $K$ -algebra. Identify  $K[V^{*\oplus(r-1)}]^\Gamma$  as a subring of  $K[V^{*\oplus s}]^\Gamma$  as in (C.9).

For any  $s \geq r$ ,  $K[V^{*\oplus s}]^\Gamma$  is generated as a  $K$ -algebra by the union of the set of all elements  $[i_1, \dots, i_r] \in K[V^{*s}]$  and the set  $\mathcal{U}(s)(S)$  obtained by applying all polarization operators in  $\mathcal{U}(s)$  to  $S$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to prove the result after extending the ground field  $K$ , and so we may suppose that the finite étale  $K$ -group  $\Gamma$  is an ordinary finite group. This case is [12, Cor. 1, §7.5].  $\blacksquare$

Returning to our original situation of interest, we wish to compute  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra generators for the invariants  $R^{G(1)} \subseteq \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1]^{G(1)}$  in the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -subalgebra  $R$  generated by bihomogeneous polynomials of bidegree  $(v, v)$  for  $v \geq 0$ . We first use Theorem C.7 with  $\Gamma = \tilde{\rho}(G)$  and  $s = r = 2$  to compute  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra generators of  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1]^{G(1)}$  by computing  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra generators of  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$ .

We will prove the following classical theorem, formulated to work over  $\mathbf{Q}$  and not just over  $\mathbf{C}$ :

**Theorem C.8.** Let

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_{12} &= X_0 X_1 (X_0^{10} + 11X_0^5 X_1^5 - X_1^{10}) \\ \Phi_{20} &= -(X_0^{20} + X_1^{20}) + 228(X_0^{15} X_1^5 - X_1^{15} X_0^5) - 494X_0^{10} X_1^{10} \\ \Phi_{30} &= (X_0^{30} + X_1^{30}) + 522(X_1^{25} X_0^5 - X_0^{25} X_1^5) - 10005(X_0^{20} X_1^{10} + X_1^{20} X_0^{10}). \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$  is generated over  $\mathbf{Q}$  by  $\Phi_{12}, \Phi_{20}, \Phi_{30}$ , which satisfy the relation

$$(C.11) \quad 1728\Phi_{12}^5 - \Phi_{20}^3 - \Phi_{30}^2 = 0.$$

Moreover, if  $T$  is the graded polynomial ring  $\mathbf{Q}[U_{12}, U_{20}, U_{30}]$  where  $U_i$  is given degree  $i$  then the kernel of the surjective graded  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra homomorphism  $\alpha : T \rightarrow \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$  given by  $\alpha : U_i \mapsto \Phi_i$  is a principal ideal, generated by  $1728U_{12}^5 - U_{20}^3 - U_{30}^2$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f \in \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$  be any nonzero homogeneous polynomial. The closed subscheme  $Z = V(f) \subseteq X_\mu(5)$  is  $G$ -stable and is therefore topologically a finite union  $G$ -orbits. Conversely, any finite union of  $G$ -orbits defines a  $G$ -stable closed subscheme of  $X_\mu(5)$  that is the zero-scheme of a nonzero radical homogeneous polynomial  $f$  that is unique up to unit-scaling and hence the line  $\mathbf{Q} \cdot f$  supports a 1-dimensional algebraic representation of  $G$ ; the only such representation is the trivial one, so such  $f$  must be  $G$ -invariant.

Now the map  $j : X_\mu(5) \rightarrow \mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{Q}}^1$  is a degree-60 covering branched only over  $j = 0$ ,  $j = \infty$  and  $j = 1728$ , and it is generically a torsor for the generically-free action of the quotient  $\rho(G) = G/\mu_2$  of  $G$  by its center. In particular, over  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta_5)$  this becomes a Galois covering with Galois group  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})/\{\pm 1\} \simeq A_5$ . By identifying  $X_\mu(5)$  with  $X_\zeta(5)$  over  $\mathbf{Q}(\zeta)$  we see that  $j^{-1}(0)$  consists of 20 (geometrical) points with ramification index 3,  $j^{-1}(\infty)$  consists of the 12 (geometrical) cusps with ramification index 5, and  $j^{-1}(1728)$  has 30 (geometrical) points with ramification index 2. For any field  $K$  of characteristic 0 and any  $t \in \mathbf{P}^1(K)$ ,  $j^{-1}(t)$  is a  $G$ -orbit on  $X_\mu(5)/K$ . We write  $\phi_t$  to denote the associated nonzero radical  $G$ -invariant homogeneous polynomial in  $K[X_0, X_1]$  (so  $\phi_t$  is well-defined modulo  $K^\times$ ). (Klein [11, p. 50] calls the  $\phi_t$  *ground forms*). We claim that the ring  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$  is generated by  $\phi_0$ ,  $\phi_\infty$ , and  $\phi_{1728}$ .

It suffices to work over  $K = \overline{\mathbf{Q}}$ , and by working over this  $K$  we may identify every  $G$ -orbit in  $X_\mu(5)(K)$  as  $j^{-1}(t)$  for a unique  $t \in \mathbf{P}^1(K)$ . If  $\phi \in (K \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} R)^G$  is nonzero then its  $K$ -finite zero-scheme  $V(\phi)$  on  $X_\mu(5)/K$  is a union of orbits and hence  $\phi$  is a product of factors that are  $G$ -stable up to  $K^\times$ -multiple and hence are  $G$ -stable (as  $G$  has no non-trivial 1-dimensional characters). Thus, we may suppose that the zero-scheme of  $\phi$  is topologically a  $G$ -orbit, so  $V(\phi) = j^{-1}(t)$  topologically for some  $t \in \mathbf{P}^1(K)$ . By  $G$ -invariance, it follows that  $\phi$  has zeros of equal order at all points of  $V(\phi)$  and hence  $\phi$  is a scalar multiple of a power of the radical  $\phi_t$  whose degree is equal to the size of  $j^{-1}(t)$ . We therefore may restrict our attention to the  $\phi_t$ 's.

Suppose that  $t \notin \{0, \infty, 1728\}$ , pick  $v \in j^{-1}(t)$ , and consider the polynomial

$$\phi := \phi_\infty^5(v)\phi_0^3 - \phi_0^3(v)\phi_\infty^5.$$

By construction,  $\phi$  is a  $G$ -invariant homogeneous polynomial of degree  $60 = |G|/2$  vanishing at  $v$ , and hence it vanishes on the  $G$ -orbit  $j^{-1}(t)$  of  $v$ . This orbit has  $|G|/2$  distinct geometrical points, so  $\phi$  is a scalar multiple of  $\phi_t$ . This shows that all  $\phi_t$  lie in the subalgebra generated by  $\phi_0$ ,  $\phi_{1728}$ , and  $\phi_\infty$ .

Since  $G$  is finite,  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]$  is a finite  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$ -module, so both rings have Krull dimension 2. Moreover,  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]^G$  is a domain and hence  $\ker \alpha$  is a prime ideal which (by dimension considerations) must have height 1. But  $T$  is a polynomial ring, hence a UFD, so every height-1 prime is principal. Thus, up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple there is a unique irreducible algebraic relation among  $U_{12}$ ,  $U_{20}$ , and  $U_{30}$  over  $\mathbf{Q}$  that is contained in  $\ker \alpha$  and it must generate  $\ker \alpha$ . The same holds when  $\mathbf{Q}$  is replaced with any field of characteristic 0. The preceding considerations apply with  $t = 1728$  and thereby provide an algebraic relation

$$(C.12) \quad \phi_{1728}^2 = \phi_\infty^5(v)\phi_0^3 - \phi_0^3(v)\phi_\infty^5$$

over  $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$  for any  $v \in j^{-1}(1728)$ ; the coefficients  $\phi_\infty(v), \phi_0(v)$  cannot both vanish (as  $\phi_{1728} \neq 0$ ), so this is an irreducible algebraic relation over  $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}$ . The monicity in  $\phi_{1728}^2$  and the uniqueness of the irreducible relation up to  $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}^\times$ -multiple forces the relation (C.12) to have coefficients in  $\mathbf{Q}$ .

It remains to compute  $\phi_0$ ,  $\phi_\infty$ , and  $\phi_{1728}$  explicitly (up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple) and to find the explicit coefficients in (C.12) upon making specific choices of  $\phi_0$ ,  $\phi_\infty$ , and  $\phi_{1728}$ . In Table B.1, we computed the values of  $j_5$  on the geometrical cusps  $j^{-1}(\infty)$ . As  $G$  acts transitively on the geometrical cusps of  $X_\mu(5)$  we can immediately write down the degree-12  $G$ -invariant polynomial

$$\Phi_{12} := X_0 X_1 \prod_{c \in j^{-1}(\infty) - \{\infty, 0\}} (X_0 - X_1 j_5(c)) = X_0 X_1 (X_0^{10} + 11 X_0^5 X_1^5 - X_1^{10}),$$

which by construction must be (a  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple of)  $\phi_\infty$ . The coordinate-free theory of the Hessian ensures that the *Hessian determinant*

$$H(\Phi_{12}) = \begin{vmatrix} \partial^2 \Phi_{12} / \partial X_0^2 & \partial^2 \Phi_{12} / \partial X_0 \partial X_1 \\ \partial^2 \Phi_{12} / \partial X_1 \partial X_0 & \partial^2 \Phi_{12} / \partial X_1^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

is  $G$ -invariant (more specifically, by [11, pp. 56–62] this is a *covariant* of  $\Phi_{12}$  of degree  $2(12 - 2) = 20$ ), so

$$\Phi_{20} := \frac{1}{121} H(\Phi_{12}) = -(X_0^{20} + X_1^{20}) + 228(X_0^{15} X_1^5 - X_1^{15} X_0^5) - 494 X_0^{10} X_1^{10}$$

is a degree-20 invariant polynomial. As there is a unique  $G$ -orbit of degree 20 on  $X_\mu(5)$ , namely  $j^{-1}(0)$ , we conclude that  $\Phi_{20}$  is a  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple of  $\phi_0$ . Similarly, the differential determinant

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_{30} &:= -\frac{1}{20} \begin{vmatrix} \partial \Phi_{12} / \partial X_0 & \partial \Phi_{12} / \partial X_1 \\ \partial \Phi_{20} / \partial X_1 & \partial \Phi_{20} / \partial X_1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (X_0^{30} + X_1^{30}) + 522(X_1^{25} X_0^5 - X_0^{25} X_1^5) - 10005(X_0^{20} X_1^{10} + X_1^{20} X_0^{10}) \end{aligned}$$

of degree  $3(12 - 2) = 30$  must be a  $G$ -invariant polynomial, and must therefore coincide with a  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple of  $\phi_{1728}$  because there is a unique  $G$ -orbit of degree 30, and 30 cannot be written as a sum of positive integral multiples of 12 and 20.

We may now rephrase (C.12) as an algebraic relation

$$a\Phi_{12}^5 - b\Phi_{20}^3 - \Phi_{30}^2 = 0$$

for some unique  $a, b \in \mathbf{Q}$  not both zero. Using (C.4) and the definitions of the  $\Phi$ 's in terms of  $X_0$  and  $X_1$ , comparison of a few  $q$ -series coefficients allows us to solve for  $a$  and  $b$  to obtain the relation (C.11).  $\blacksquare$

Before we proceed further with our computation of  $R^{G(n)}$ , let us use (C.4) to identify  $\Phi_{12}, \Phi_{20}, \Phi_{30}$  as modular forms for  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$ . By (C.4) we may identify the coordinates  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  with weight-5 modular forms for  $\Gamma(5)$ , so  $\Phi_{12}, \Phi_{20}$ , and  $\Phi_{30}$  are modular forms for  $\Gamma(5)$  with weights 60, 100, 150 respectively; the  $G(\mathbf{C})$ -invariance implies that these are in fact modular forms of full level 1. By comparing  $q$ -expansions, we thereby easily find

$$(C.13) \quad \Phi_{12} = -\Delta^5 = -q^5 + 120q^6 - 7020q^7 + \dots$$

$$(C.14) \quad \Phi_{20} = \Delta^8 E_2 = q^8 + 48q^9 - 25776q^{10} + \dots$$

$$(C.15) \quad \Phi_{30} = \Delta^{12} E_3 = q^{12} - 792q^{13} + 169560q^{14} + \dots$$

where

$$\Delta = q \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 - q^k)^{24}, \quad E_2 = 1 + 240 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k^3 q^k}{1 - q^k}, \quad E_3 = 1 - 504 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k^5 q^k}{1 - q^k}.$$

From these identifications, we immediately see that  $j = E_2^3 / \Delta = \Phi_{20}^3 / \Phi_{12}^5$ . As we have the identification  $j_5 = X_0 / X_1$ , we use Theorem C.8 to find

$$(C.16) \quad j = \frac{1}{j_5^5} \cdot \frac{(j_5^{20} - 228j_5^{15} + 494j_5^{10} + 228j_5^5 + 1)^3}{(j_5^{10} - 11j_5^5 - 1)^5}.$$

This ‘‘icosahedral equation’’ was of course well-known to Klein [11, pp. 60–66].

Returning now to the determination of  $R^{G(n)}$  for  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$ , we know from Theorem C.7 that  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1]^{G(1)}$  is generated by the determinant  $[1, 2]$  as in Theorem C.7 and all polarizations of  $\Phi_{12}$ ,  $\Phi_{20}$ , and  $\Phi_{30}$ . Define

$$A_1 := \alpha_1[1, 2],$$

and for  $i = 6, 10, 15$  put

$$(C.17) \quad A_i := \alpha_i \Delta_{12}^i \Phi_{2i}$$

where  $\alpha_i \in \mathbf{Q}^\times$  is chosen so as to make  $A_i$  primitive (with an arbitrary choice of sign) for  $i \in \{1, 6, 10, 15\}$ . After a short calculation with the explicit formula (C.10) (and an arbitrary choice of sign), we find

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 &= X_0 Y_1 - Y_0 X_1 \\ A_6 &= 42(X_0 Y_1 + Y_0 X_1)(X_1^5 Y_1^5 - X_0^5 Y_0^5) + X_0^6 Y_1^6 + Y_0^6 X_1^6 + 36X_0 Y_0 X_1 Y_1 (X_0^4 Y_1^4 + Y_0^4 X_1^4) \\ &\quad + 225X_0^2 Y_0^2 X_1^2 Y_1^2 (X_0^2 Y_1^2 + Y_0^2 X_1^2) + 400X_0^3 Y_0^3 X_1^3 Y_1^3 \\ A_{10} &= 374(X_1^{10} Y_1^{10} + X_0^{10} Y_0^{10}) - 66(X_1^5 Y_1^5 - X_0^5 Y_0^5)(21(X_0^5 Y_1^5 + Y_0^5 X_1^5) + 175X_0 Y_0 X_1 Y_1 (X_0^3 Y_1^3 + Y_0^3 X_1^3) \\ &\quad + 450X_0^2 Y_0^2 X_1^2 Y_1^2 (X_0 Y_1 + Y_0 X_1)) + (X_0^{10} Y_1^{10} + Y_0^{10} X_1^{10}) + 100X_0 Y_0 X_1 Y_1 (X_0^8 Y_1^8 + Y_0^8 X_1^8) \\ &\quad + 2025X_0^2 Y_0^2 X_1^2 Y_1^2 (X_0^6 Y_1^6 + Y_0^6 X_1^6) + 14400X_0^3 Y_0^3 X_1^3 Y_1^3 (X_0^4 Y_1^4 + Y_0^4 X_1^4) \\ &\quad + 44100X_0^4 Y_0^4 X_1^4 Y_1^4 (X_0^2 Y_1^2 + Y_0^2 X_1^2) + 63504X_0^5 Y_0^5 X_1^5 Y_1^5 \\ A_{15} &= X_0^{15} Y_0^{15} + Y_1^{15} X_1^{15} + (X_1^{10} Y_1^{10} - Y_0^{10} X_0^{10})(11(X_0^5 Y_1^5 + Y_0^5 X_1^5) + 75X_0 Y_0 X_1 Y_1 (X_0^3 Y_1^3 + Y_0^3 X_1^3) \\ &\quad + 175X_0^2 Y_0^2 X_1^2 Y_1^2 (X_0 Y_1 + Y_0 X_1)) - (X_0^5 Y_0^5 + Y_1^5 X_1^5)(X_0^{10} Y_1^{10} + Y_0^{10} X_1^{10}) \\ &\quad + 25X_0 Y_0 X_1 Y_1 (X_0^8 Y_1^8 + Y_0^8 X_1^8) + 225X_0^2 Y_0^2 X_1^2 Y_1^2 (X_0^6 Y_1^6 + Y_0^6 X_1^6) + 975X_0^3 Y_0^3 X_1^3 Y_1^3 (X_0^4 Y_1^4 + Y_0^4 X_1^4) \\ &\quad + 2275X_0^4 Y_0^4 X_1^4 Y_1^4 (X_0^2 Y_1^2 + Y_0^2 X_1^2) + 3003X_0^5 Y_0^5 X_1^5 Y_1^5. \end{aligned}$$

Observe that each  $A_i$  is bihomogenous and  $G$ -invariant. Thus, the ring  $S := \mathbf{Q}[A_1, A_6, A_{10}, A_{15}]$  is a subring of  $R^G$ . We claim that  $S = R^G$ . If not, we may choose (a possibly non-unique)  $f \in R^G - S$  of minimal positive bihomogeneous degree  $(d_0, d_0)$ . The  $G(1)$ -equivariant linear map  $V \rightarrow V^{\oplus 2}$  given by  $v \mapsto (v, v)$  defines a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra homomorphism  $L : \mathbf{Q}[V^{*\oplus 2}]^{G(1)} \rightarrow \mathbf{Q}[V^*]^{G(1)}$  and we use Theorem C.8 to write  $L(f) = P(\Phi_{12}, \Phi_{20}, \Phi_{30})$  for some polynomial  $P$  with  $\mathbf{Q}$ -coefficients. One checks easily from the definitions of the polarization operators (C.10) and the polynomials  $A_i$  for  $i \in \{1, 6, 10, 15\}$  (C.17) that

$$L(A_i) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = 1 \\ \beta_i \Phi_{2i} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases},$$

for some  $\beta_i \in \mathbf{Q}^\times$ . Letting

$$g = f - P(A_6/\beta_6, A_{10}/\beta_{10}, A_{15}/\beta_{15}),$$

it follows that  $L(g) = 0$  so the polynomial  $g$  vanishes on the zero-set of  $A_1$ . As  $A_1$  is absolutely irreducible, we conclude that  $A_1 | g$  so we have

$$f = A_1 f_1 + P(A_6/\beta_6, A_{10}/\beta_{10}, A_{15}/\beta_{15}),$$

where  $f_1$  is evidently a bihomogeneous  $G(1)$ -invariant polynomial of bidegree  $(d_0 - 1, d_0 - 1)$ , hence a polynomial in the  $A_i$  for  $i \in \{1, 6, 10, 15\}$  by our minimality assumption on  $d_0$ . It follows that  $f \in S$  after all, and that the polynomials  $A_i$  for  $i \in \{1, 6, 10, 15\}$  generate  $R^{G(n)}$  as a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra for  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$ .

Observe that  $A_{15}, A_{10}$ , and  $A_6$  are uniquely determined as homogeneous generators of  $R^{G(1)}$  *only modulo*  $A_1$ . As Klein [11, p. 242] observes,  $A_6, A_{10}$ , and  $A_{15}$  do not have particularly nice geometric interpretations, and as a consequence, when  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$  the formulae for  $\tilde{F}_n$  in terms of  $A_1, A_6, A_{10}$ , and  $A_{15}$  are somewhat



messy and involve rather large coefficients. Following Klein, we choose more convenient generators by defining<sup>3</sup>

$$(C.18) \quad \begin{aligned} W_2 &= A_1^2 \\ W_6 &= \frac{-A_6 + A_1^6}{42} \\ W_{10} &= \frac{A_{10} - A_1^{10} + 110A_1^4W_6}{374} \\ W_{15} &= A_{15}. \end{aligned}$$

It is immediate from these definitions that  $R^{G(1)} = \mathbf{Q}[A_1, W_6, W_{10}, W_{15}]$ . By Lemma 6.2(2), we know that for  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  the modular polynomial  $\tilde{F}_n$  satisfies  $\tilde{F}_n(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) = \tilde{F}_n(Y_0, Y_1; X_0, X_1)$ . Observe that this transformation  $h(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) \mapsto h(Y_0, Y_1; X_0, X_1)$  that preserves  $\tilde{F}_n$  also preserves  $W_6, W_{10}, W_{15}$  but sends  $A_1$  to  $-A_1$ . We conclude that  $\tilde{F}_n$  is a polynomial in  $W_2 = A_1^2, W_6, W_{10}, W_{15}$ . Such an expression for  $\tilde{F}_n$  is not unique, as the relation (C.11) gives rise to a relation among the  $W_i$ :

$$(C.19) \quad 16W_{15}^2 = W_2^5W_{10}^2 - 10W_2^4W_6^2W_{10} + 25W_2^3W_6^4 - 40W_2^2W_6W_{10}^2 + 360W_2W_6^3W_{10} - 864W_6^5 + 16W_{10}^3.$$

However, since  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$ , so in particular  $n > 2$ , it follows that  $\deg \pi_n = n \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$  is even and hence every homogeneous component of  $\tilde{F}_n$  is bihomogeneous with *even* bidegree. Since  $W_2, W_6, W_{10}$  are bihomogeneous of even bidegree and  $W_{15}$  is bihomogeneous of *odd* bidegree,  $\tilde{F}_n$  is in fact a polynomial in  $W_2, W_6, W_{10}$  and  $W_{15}^2$ . Thus, (C.19) shows that  $\tilde{F}_n$  is a polynomial in  $W_2, W_6, W_{10}$ . We claim that such a representation is *unique*. Indeed, the ring  $R$  is 3-dimensional (as it is the Segre product of  $\mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1]$  and  $\mathbf{Q}[Y_0, Y_1]$ ) and since  $G(1)$  is finite,  $R^{G(1)}$  also has dimension 3. As  $R^{G(1)}$  is generated as a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra by  $A_1, W_6, W_{10}, W_{15}$  and we have the relation (C.19), we conclude that  $A_1, W_6, W_{10}$  are algebraically independent, so  $W_2 = A_1^2, W_6, W_{10}$  must be algebraically independent.

We next compute the ring of invariants  $R^{G(n)}$  when  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{5}$  and use it to analyze the element  $\tilde{F}_n$  for such  $n$ . As the action  $\tilde{\rho} \otimes \tilde{\rho}_n$  of  $G$  on  $R \subseteq \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1, Y_0, Y_1]$  is not the same on each set of variables  $X_0, X_1$  and  $Y_0, Y_1$ , the polarization method used to treat the case of  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$  is not available. Following Klein [7, pp. 139–141], we will explicitly construct generators for  $R^{G(n)}$ .

We have seen that the modular polynomials  $\tilde{F}_n$  are contained in the  $\mathbf{N}_0$ -graded subring

$$R \subseteq \mathbf{Q}[X_0, X_1] \otimes \mathbf{Q}[Y_0, Y_1]$$

whose  $v$ th graded piece  $R_v$  is the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -vector space of bihomogeneous polynomials of bidegree  $(v, v)$ . Moreover, it is clear that  $R$  is generated as a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -algebra by  $R_1$ . Let  $V_X$  and  $V_Y$  be the representation spaces underlying  $\tilde{\rho}$  and  $\tilde{\rho}_n$ , and identify  $\mathbf{Q}[V_X^* \otimes V_Y^*]$  with the polynomial ring  $\mathbf{Q}[y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4]$  via

$$(C.20) \quad \begin{array}{llll} y_1 \mapsto X_0Y_0 & y_2 \mapsto X_1Y_0 & y_3 \mapsto -X_0Y_1 & y_4 \mapsto X_1Y_1. \end{array}$$

Observe that this gives a  $G$ -equivariant isomorphism  $\mathbf{Q}[y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4]/(y_1y_4 + y_2y_3) \simeq R$  as graded rings. Geometrically, this is simply the Segre embedding  $\mathbf{P}^1 \times \mathbf{P}^1 \rightarrow \mathbf{P}^3$ .

Since  $\mu_2 \subseteq G$  acts trivially on each  $y_i$ , the representation  $G \rightarrow \mathrm{SL}(V_X \otimes V_Y)$  factors through  $G/\mu_2$ . We claim that the representation  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  is geometrically irreducible. We may pass to an algebraically closed ground field  $K$ , so  $G/\mu_2$  is identified with  $A_5$ . Since the irreducible representations of  $A_5$  have dimensions 1, 3, 3, 4, 5, geometrically  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  is either irreducible or it decomposes as the direct sum of the trivial

<sup>3</sup>In Klein's notation [11, p. 242], we have taken  $W_6 = B/2$ ,  $W_{10} = C$ , and  $W_{15} = D$ . We have decided to depart from Klein's conventions in order to obtain more compact formulae and to ensure that our generators of  $R^{G(1)}$  are polynomials in  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  with integer coefficients.

representation with one of the three-dimensional representations or as the direct sum of four copies of the trivial representation. As  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{5}$ , a simple calculation shows that

$$M_n T M_n^{-1} = T^2,$$

so using the explicit description (C.5) of  $\tilde{\rho}_\zeta$  for a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in K$  and using the definition of  $\tilde{\rho}_{\zeta,n}$  we calculate that  $T \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  carries  $y_i$  to  $\zeta^i y_i$  and hence the character of  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  takes the value  $\zeta + \zeta^2 + \zeta^{-2} + \zeta^{-1} = -1$  on the conjugacy class of the order-5 element  $T$ . The character table for  $A_5$  then rules out the possibility that  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  has the trivial representation as a direct summand, and this gives our claim. Thus,  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  is a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -model for the unique (absolutely) irreducible 4-dimensional representation of  $A_5$ ; that is, just as  $G/\mu_2$  is an étale twisted form of  $A_5$ ,  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  is an étale twisted form of the  $A_5$ -stable subspace of those vectors of trace 0 inside the standard 5-dimensional permutation representation of  $A_5$ .

Consider the transformations

$$(C.21) \quad i_1 : h(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) \mapsto h(-Y_1, Y_0; X_0, X_1)$$

$$(C.22) \quad i_2 : h(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) \mapsto h(Y_0, Y_1; -X_1, X_0)$$

on  $R$ .

**Lemma C.9.** *For any  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{5}$  we have  $\tilde{F}_n \circ i_1 = \tilde{F}_n$  and  $\tilde{F}_n \circ i_2 = \tilde{F}_n$  if  $n > 2$ , while  $\tilde{F}_2 \circ i_2 = -\tilde{F}_2$ .*

The sign for  $i_2$  should be compared with the delicate symmetry for the dehomogenized polynomial  $F_n$  in Theorem 6.5.

*Proof.* We may and do extend scalars to a field  $K$  that splits  $X^5 - 1$  and we choose a primitive 5th root of unity  $\zeta \in K$ , so we thereby identify  $G$  with  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z}/5\mathbf{Z})$  and  $G/\mu_2$  with  $A_5$ . As was explained above, we may (non-canonically) identify  $V_X \otimes V_Y$  with the hyperplane  $\sum z_j = 0$  in the 5-dimensional standard representation  $W$  for  $A_5$  that we endow with coordinate functions  $z_1, \dots, z_5$ .

We let  $G$  act on  $K[W^*]$  via the standard  $A_5$ -action that permutes the  $z_j$ 's, so we have a  $G$ -equivariant graded ring homomorphism

$$(C.23) \quad \varphi : K[y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4]/(y_1 y_4 + y_2 y_3) \longrightarrow K[z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4, z_5]/(z_1 + z_2 + z_3 + z_4 + z_5)$$

given explicitly as in [7, p. 140] by

$$(C.24) \quad \varphi(y_j) = \frac{1}{5} \sum_{k=1}^5 \zeta^{-kj} z_k.$$

As this is a graded homomorphism and the  $y_i$ 's satisfy a nontrivial  $G$ -invariant quadratic relation, the  $z_i$ 's must also satisfy a nontrivial  $G$ -invariant quadratic relation. Since the  $G$ -invariant quadratic polynomials in the  $z_i$ 's are precisely the  $K$ -span of  $s_1^2$  and  $s_2$  with

$$(C.25) \quad s_j := \sum_{k=1}^5 z_k^j,$$

we must have that  $s_2 = 0$ . Letting  $B := K[z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4, z_5]/(s_1, s_2)$ , it follows that (C.24) descends to a  $G$ -equivariant isomorphism

$$(C.26) \quad \varphi : K[y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4]/(y_1 y_4 + y_2 y_3) \xrightarrow{\sim} B$$

and hence an isomorphism  $(K \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} R)^{G(n)} \simeq B^G$ .

The  $K$ -algebra of invariants  $B^G$  is generated by the images of generators of  $K[z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4, z_5]^G$ ; that is,  $B^G$  is generated by the images of the power sums (C.25) for  $1 \leq j \leq 5$  and the discriminant  $\Delta := \prod_{i < j} (z_i - z_j)$ . The transformations  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  correspond to the automorphisms  $\sigma \circ (1 \times [\delta_3])$  and  $\sigma \circ ([\delta_3] \times 1)$  of  $X_\zeta(5) \times X_\zeta(5)$  occurring in Lemma 6.2. Since

$$\sigma \circ ([\delta_3] \times 1) = \sigma \circ (1 \times [\delta_3]) \circ \delta_2 \times \delta_2,$$

it follows from Lemma 6.2(2) and the commutative diagram (C.6) with  $\gamma = \delta_2$  that

$$\tilde{F}_n \circ i_j = \pm \tilde{F}_n$$

for  $j = 1, 2$ ; the sign may depend on  $j, n$ . It remains to determine the sign.

Observe that  $i_1(y_i) = y_{3i}$ , and thus, as one computes,  $i_1(z_i) = z_{2i}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 5$  (where the indices are taken modulo 5). This is an *odd* permutation of the  $z_j$ , so  $i_1(s) = s$  for any symmetric function  $s$  in  $z_1, \dots, z_5$ , while  $i_1(\Delta) = -\Delta$ .

Since  $\Delta^2$  is a polynomial in the  $z_j$ , we may write the image of  $\tilde{F}_n$  in  $B$  as  $u + v\Delta$  where  $u, v$  are symmetric in the  $z_i$ . Thus, the image of  $\tilde{F}_n \circ i_1$  in  $B$  is then  $u - v\Delta$ , so  $u + v\Delta = \pm(u - v\Delta)$ , whence either  $u = 0$  or  $v = 0$  (depending on whether the sign is  $-1$  or  $+1$  respectively). In the former case,  $\tilde{F}_n$  is reducible, which is a contradiction. Thus,  $v = 0$  and the image of  $\tilde{F}_n = \tilde{F}_n \circ i_1$  in  $B$  is a polynomial in the symmetric functions  $s_3, s_4, s_5$  of the  $z_i$ . For  $3 \leq j \leq 5$  we define  $W_j \in K[y_1, y_2, y_3, y_4]$  by

$$W_j := \alpha_j \varphi^{-1}(s_j),$$

with  $\alpha_j \in \mathbf{Q}^\times$  chosen (with arbitrary sign) so as to make  $W_j$  primitive. Since no nonzero polynomial relation holds between the  $s_j$ 's, we conclude that  $\tilde{F}_n$  is *uniquely* a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -polynomial in  $W_3, W_4, W_5$ .

The  $W_j$ 's may be written as polynomials in the  $X_i, Y_i$  by using (C.20). Using the explicit description of the isomorphism  $\varphi$  as in (C.24), we compute

$$W_3 = -X_0^3 Y_0^2 Y_1 + X_0^2 X_1 Y_1^3 + X_0 X_1^2 Y_0^3 + X_1^3 Y_0 Y_1^2$$

$$W_4 = -X_0^4 Y_0 Y_1^3 + X_0^3 X_1 Y_0^4 - 3X_0^2 X_1^2 Y_0^2 Y_1^2 - X_0 X_1^3 Y_1^4 + X_1^4 Y_0^3 Y_1$$

$$W_5 = X_0^5 Y_0^5 - X_0^5 Y_1^5 + 10X_0^4 X_1 Y_0^3 Y_1^2 + 10X_0^3 X_1^2 Y_0 Y_1^4 + 10X_0^2 X_1^3 Y_0^4 Y_1 - 10X_0 X_1^4 Y_0^2 Y_1^3 + X_1^5 Y_0^5 + X_1^5 Y_1^5.$$

Note that  $i_2(W_j) = (-1)^j W_j$  for  $j = 3, 4, 5$ . As  $\tilde{F}_n$  is bihomogeneous of even bidegree for  $n > 2$ , every monomial term  $W_3^a W_4^b W_5^c$  must have  $3a + 4b + 5c \equiv a + b \equiv 0 \pmod{2}$ . This shows that  $\tilde{F}_n \circ i_2 = \tilde{F}_n$  for  $n > 2$ , and by degree considerations we evidently must have  $\tilde{F}_2 = W_3$  (up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -scaling), so  $\tilde{F}_2 \circ i_2 = -\tilde{F}_2$ .  $\blacksquare$

*Remark C.10.* Observe that the preceding argument would not have worked to compute the ring of invariants  $R^{G(1)}$ , as in this case the 4-dimensional representation  $V$  of  $G/\mu_2$  that we obtain is reducible, being the sum of the trivial representation and a 3-dimensional representation, as one easily sees over an algebraically closed field by computing the character values.

*Remark C.11.* We have taken the power sums  $s_3, s_4, s_5 \in B$  in the  $z_i$  as generators of the ring of invariants  $B^G$  and used the isomorphism (C.24) to define polynomials  $W_3, W_4, W_5$  in  $X_0, X_1, Y_0, Y_1$ . One might decide instead to use the *elementary* symmetric functions  $e_3, e_4, e_5$  in the  $z_i$  instead of the power sums  $s_3, s_4, s_5$  to generate the ring  $B^G$ . However, because of Newton's formula

$$(-1)^{n+1} e_n - s_n = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (-1)^j e_j s_{n-j} = 0$$

and the fact that  $s_1 = s_2 = e_1 = e_2 = 0$  in  $B$ , we see that  $s_j$  is a  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -multiple of  $e_j$  for  $1 \leq j \leq 5$ , so we conclude that the formulae for  $W_3, W_4, W_5$  (up to sign) do not depend on whether one chooses the power sums or the elementary symmetric functions as generators for the algebra  $B^G$ .

Recall that we have an isomorphism  $R^{G(n)} \simeq R^{G(-n)}$  as in (C.7) given by

$$f(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) \mapsto f(-X_1, X_0; Y_0, Y_1).$$

For  $i = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 15$  define

$$Z_i(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) = W_i(-X_1, X_0; Y_0, Y_1);$$

the  $W_i$ 's were all defined in the proof of Lemma C.9 and the discussion following the proof of Theorem C.8. We have now proved the following theorem:

**Theorem C.12.** *Let  $n > 1$  be any integer with  $(n, 5) = 1$  and let  $W_i$  and  $Z_i$  be as above. Then  $\tilde{F}_n$  is uniquely a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -polynomial in:*

$$(C.27) \quad \begin{cases} W_2, W_6, W_{10} & \text{if } n \equiv 1 \pmod{5} \\ W_3, W_4, W_5 & \text{if } n \equiv 2 \pmod{5} \\ Z_3, Z_4, Z_5 & \text{if } n \equiv 3 \pmod{5} \\ Z_2, Z_6, Z_{10} & \text{if } n \equiv 4 \pmod{5} \end{cases}$$

The point is that uniqueness is inherited under extension on the ground field and also descends through such extensions, so it suffices to work over an extension of  $\mathbf{Q}$ . Upon introducing a primitive 5th root of unity, we can apply all preceding considerations (including the ones in the proof of Lemma C.9).

Computing  $F_n$  for any given  $n$  relatively prime to 5 is now a matter of simple linear algebra. We know that  $\tilde{F}_n$  can be written as a  $\mathbf{Q}$ -linear combination of certain monomials in the  $W_i, Z_j$ . Knowledge of the common  $X$ - and  $Y$ -degrees of  $F_n$  and the  $W_i, Z_j$  enables us to predict exactly which monomials can occur. Using the identification (C.4) of  $X_0, X_1$  with weight-5 modular forms for  $\Gamma(5)$  and hence of  $Y_0, Y_1$  with weight-5 modular forms for  $\Gamma(5) \cap \Gamma_0(n)$ , we may compute the  $q$ -expansions of the modular forms  $W_i, Z_j$ . By computing enough terms, we are guaranteed to find a unique relation (up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -scaling) in the expected degrees, and this must be  $\tilde{F}_n$  (up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -scaling). One can even specify how many  $q$ -series terms are sufficient: indeed, with the identifications above,  $\tilde{F}_n$  is a modular form for  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{Z})$  of weight  $k := 5n \prod_{p|n} (1 + 1/p)$ , so we need only check the  $q$ -expansion to order  $\lfloor k/12 \rfloor$ .

Let us illustrate this with an example.

*Example C.13.* Let  $n = 8$ . From Table C.1, we see that  $\tilde{F}_8$  is an element of  $\mathbf{Q}[Z_3, Z_4, Z_5]$ . As  $F_8$  has common  $X$ - and  $Y$ -degree  $2^2 \cdot 3 = 12$ , the only monomials that can occur are

$$Z_3^4, Z_4^3, Z_3Z_4Z_5.$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} Z_3^4(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) &= q^{44} - 112q^{45} + 6096q^{46} - 214592q^{47} + \dots, \\ Z_4^3(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) &= \quad - \quad q^{45} + 120q^{46} - 7020q^{47} + \dots, \\ Z_3Z_4Z_5(X_0, X_1; Y_0, Y_1) &= q^{44} - 114q^{45} + 6336q^{46} - 228632q^{47} + \dots, \end{aligned}$$

from which we determine that any linear relation among these monomials is contained in the kernel of the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -112 \\ 0 & -1 \\ 1 & -114 \end{pmatrix}.$$

But the kernel is already one-dimensional, being the  $\mathbf{Q}$ -span of the row vector  $(1, 2, -1)$ . Thus we conclude that  $\tilde{F}_8$  is a scalar multiple (which can easily be determined by examining the coefficient of the top  $X_0$ -degree term) of

$$Z_3^4 + 2Z_4^3 - Z_3Z_4Z_5.$$

We tabulate  $\tilde{F}_n$  (up to a  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -factor, so that equality below is to be interpreted as up to  $\mathbf{Q}^\times$ -scaling) for  $n \leq 27$  (Observe the errors in  $\tilde{F}_{13}$  and  $\tilde{F}_8$  in [7, vol. 2, p. 150]). We note that Klein writes  $\tilde{F}_n$  for  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{5}$  in terms of the  $A_i$  and  $B_i := A_i(-X_1, X_0; Y_0, Y_0)$ , and we use the  $W_i$  and  $Z_i$  because  $\tilde{F}_n$  is

*significantly* simpler in these variables. We do not know why Klein did not use his variables  $A, B, C, D$  as in [11, p. 242] to write  $\tilde{F}_n$ , as the computations involved are much less arduous for even moderately large  $n$  when using the  $W_i$ 's and  $Z_i$ 's.

$$F_2 = W_3$$

$$F_3 = Z_4$$

$$F_4 = Z_6$$

$$F_6 = W_2W_{10} - W_6^2$$

$$F_7 = W_3W_5 - W_4^2$$

$$F_8 = -Z_3^4 + Z_3Z_4Z_5 - 2Z_4^3$$

$$F_9 = -4Z_2^3Z_6 + Z_2Z_{10} + 3Z_6^2$$

$$F_{11} = 4W_2^6 - 4W_2^3W_6 + W_2W_{10} - W_6^2$$

$$F_{12} = 2W_3^8 - W_3^5W_4W_5 + W_3W_4^4W_5 - W_4^6$$

$$F_{13} = -Z_3^3Z_5 - Z_3^2Z_4^2 + Z_4Z_5^2$$

$$F_{14} = -16Z_2^9Z_6 + 4Z_2^7Z_{10} - 36Z_2^6Z_6^2 + 4Z_2^4Z_6Z_{10} - 20Z_2^3Z_6^3 + Z_2^2Z_{10}^2 - 2Z_2Z_6^2Z_{10} + Z_6^4$$

$$F_{16} = -8W_2^9W_6 + 4W_2^7W_{10} + 52W_2^6W_6^2 - 18W_2^4W_6W_{10} + 10W_2^3W_6^3 + W_2^2W_{10}^2 - W_6^4$$

$$F_{17} = 8W_3^6 - 10W_3^3W_4W_5 + 9W_3^2W_4^3 + W_3W_5^3 - W_4^2W_5^2$$

$$F_{18} = -8Z_3^{12} + 8Z_3^9 Z_4 Z_5 - 12Z_3^8 Z_4^3 - Z_3^7 Z_5^3 + 4Z_3^6 Z_4^2 Z_5^2 - 2Z_3^5 Z_4^4 Z_5 \\ - 2Z_3^4 Z_4^6 + Z_3^4 Z_4 Z_5^4 - 5Z_3^3 Z_4^3 Z_5^3 + 10Z_3^2 Z_4^2 Z_5^2 - 9Z_3 Z_4^7 Z_5 + 3Z_4^9$$

$$F_{19} = -4Z_2^7 Z_6 + Z_2^5 Z_{10} + 31Z_2^4 Z_6^2 - 24Z_2^2 Z_6 Z_{10} - 8Z_2 Z_6^3 + 4Z_{10}^2$$

$$F_{21} = -16W_2^7 W_6^3 + W_2^6 W_{10}^2 + 2W_2^5 W_6^2 W_{10} + 285W_2^4 W_6^4 \\ - 16W_2^3 W_6 W_{10}^2 - 72W_2^2 W_6^3 W_{10} + 72W_2 W_6^5 + 4W_2 W_{10}^3 - 4W_6^2 W_{10}^2$$

$$F_{22} = 8W_3^{12} - 36W_3^9 W_4 W_5 + 60W_3^8 W_4^3 + W_3^7 W_5^3 + 52W_3^6 W_4^2 W_5^2 - 172W_3^5 W_4^4 W_5 + 134W_3^4 W_4^6 \\ - 2W_3^4 W_4 W_5^4 - 22W_3^3 W_4^3 W_5^3 + 113W_3^2 W_4^5 W_5^2 - 171W_3 W_4^7 W_5 + W_3 W_4^2 W_5^5 + 81W_4^9 - W_4^4 W_5^4$$

$$F_{23} = -64Z_3^8 + 120Z_3^5 Z_4 Z_5 - 144Z_3^4 Z_4^3 - Z_3^3 Z_5^3 - 57Z_3^2 Z_4^2 Z_5^2 + 135Z_3 Z_4^4 Z_5 - 81Z_4^6 + Z_4 Z_5^4$$

$$F_{24} = -64Z_2^{16} Z_6 Z_{10} + 576Z_2^{15} Z_6^3 + 16Z_2^{14} Z_{10}^2 + 1888Z_2^{13} Z_6^2 Z_{10} - 16752Z_2^{12} Z_6^4 - 1264Z_2^{11} Z_6 Z_{10}^2 \\ + 7840Z_2^{10} Z_6^3 Z_{10} - 9648Z_2^9 Z_6^5 + 188Z_2^9 Z_{10}^3 - 1028Z_2^8 Z_6^2 Z_{10}^2 + 2324Z_2^7 Z_4^4 Z_{10} - 1996Z_2^6 Z_6^6 + 12Z_2^6 Z_6 Z_{10}^3 \\ - 52Z_2^5 Z_6^3 Z_{10}^2 + 132Z_2^4 Z_6^5 Z_{10} + Z_2^4 Z_{10}^4 - 92Z_2^3 Z_6^7 - 4Z_2^3 Z_6^2 Z_{10}^3 + 6Z_2^2 Z_6^4 Z_{10}^2 - 4Z_2 Z_6^6 Z_{10} + Z_6^8$$

$$F_{26} = 16W_2^{15} W_6^2 - 8W_2^{13} W_6 W_{10} + 136W_2^{12} W_6^3 + W_2^{11} W_{10}^2 - 134W_2^{10} W_6^2 W_{10} + 805W_2^9 W_6^4 + 42W_2^8 W_6 W_{10}^2 \\ - 588W_2^7 W_6^3 W_{10} + 1554W_2^6 W_6^5 - 4W_2^6 W_{10}^3 + 240W_2^5 W_6^2 W_{10}^2 - 1008W_2^4 W_6^4 W_{10} + 1204W_2^3 W_6^6 \\ - 52W_2^3 W_6 W_{10}^3 + 180W_2^2 W_6^3 W_{10}^2 - 360W_2 W_6^5 W_{10} + 4W_2 W_{10}^4 + 216W_6^7 - 4W_6^2 W_{10}^3$$

$$F_{27} = 192W_3^{12} - 408W_3^9 W_4 W_5 + 496W_3^8 W_4^3 + 3W_3^7 W_5^3 + 295W_3^6 W_4^2 W_5^2 - 837W_3^5 W_4^4 W_5 + 559W_3^4 W_4^6 \\ - 3W_3^4 W_4 W_5^4 - 80W_3^3 W_4^3 W_5^3 + 402W_3^2 W_4^5 W_5^2 - 576W_3 W_4^7 W_5 + W_3 W_4^2 W_5^5 + 256W_4^9 - W_4^4 W_5^4$$

#### APPENDIX D. EVALUATION OF CERTAIN ARITHMETIC SUMS

In this section, we prove two results that are used in §7.

**Lemma D.1.** *Let  $\varphi$  denote Euler's function, and let  $m$  be a positive integer. Then*

$$\sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \equiv 0 \pmod{m}}}^N \frac{\varphi(k)}{k^2} = \frac{6}{\pi^2} \frac{1}{[\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(m)]} \log N + O(1),$$

where the  $O$ -constant is absolute: it is independent of  $m$  and  $N$ .

*Proof.* We will study sums of the form  $\sum_{k>0, k \equiv a \pmod m} \varphi(dk)\chi(k)/k^s$  as  $s \rightarrow 1^+$ , where  $\chi$  is a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$  and  $d = \gcd(a, m) \geq 1$ . We may write  $a = da'$  and  $m = dm'$ , so

$$(D.1) \quad \begin{aligned} \sum_{\substack{k>0 \\ k \equiv a \pmod m}} \frac{\varphi(k)}{k^s} &= \sum_{\substack{k>0 \\ k \equiv a' \pmod{m'}}} \frac{\varphi(dk)}{(dk)^s} \\ &= \frac{1}{\varphi(m')d^s} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m'}} \bar{\chi}(a') \sum_{k>0} \frac{\varphi(dk)\chi(k)}{k^s}. \end{aligned}$$

We are therefore reduced to understanding sums of the form  $\sum_{k>0} \varphi(dk)\chi(k)/k^s$ . Since  $\varphi(nd)/\varphi(d)$  is a multiplicative function of  $n$ , we have an Euler product:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k>0} \frac{\varphi(dk)\chi(k)}{k^s} &= \varphi(d) \sum_{k>0} \frac{\varphi(dk)}{\varphi(d)} \frac{\chi(k)}{k^s} \\ &= \varphi(d) \prod_p \left( \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(dp^r)}{\varphi(d)} \frac{\chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} \right). \end{aligned}$$

We would like to simplify the inner sum occurring in the product above; in order to do this, we must distinguish two cases.

If  $p \nmid d$  then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(dp^r)}{\varphi(d)} \frac{\chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} &= \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(p^r)\chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} \\ &= 1 + \sum_{r > 0} \frac{p-1}{p} \cdot \frac{p^r \chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} \\ &= 1 + \frac{p-1}{p} \frac{p\chi(p)/p^s}{1 - p\chi(p)/p^s} \\ &= 1 + (p-1) \frac{\chi(p)}{p^s - p\chi(p)} \\ &= \frac{p^s - \chi(p)}{p^s - p\chi(p)} \\ &= \frac{1 - \chi(p)/p^s}{1 - \chi(p)/p^{s-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, if  $p \mid d$  then let us write  $d = p^e d'$  with  $p \nmid d'$  and  $e > 0$ . Then since

$$\frac{\varphi(dp^r)}{\varphi(d)} = \frac{\varphi(d')\varphi(p^{r+e})}{\varphi(d')\varphi(p^e)} = p^r,$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(dp^r)}{\varphi(d)} \frac{\chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} &= \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{p^r \chi(p^r)}{p^{rs}} \\ &= \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{\chi(p)^r}{p^{r(s-1)}} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - \chi(p)/p^{s-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k>0} \frac{\varphi(dk)\chi(k)}{k^s} &= \varphi(d) \prod_{p|d} \frac{1}{1-\chi(p)/p^{s-1}} \prod_{p|d} \frac{1-\chi(p)/p^s}{1-\chi(p)/p^{s-1}} \\ &= \varphi(d) \frac{L(s-1, \chi)}{L(s, \chi)} \frac{1}{\prod_{p|d} (1-\chi(p)/p^s)}. \end{aligned}$$

Together with (D.1), this gives

$$\sum_{\substack{k>0 \\ k \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \frac{\varphi(k)}{k^s} = \frac{\varphi(d)}{d^s \varphi(m')} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m'}} \bar{\chi}(a') \frac{L(s-1, \chi)}{L(s, \chi)} \prod_{p|d} \frac{1}{1-\chi(p)/p^s}.$$

Observe that for nontrivial  $\chi \pmod{m'}$ , the term  $L(s-1, \chi)/L(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) \geq 2$ , while  $L(s-1, \chi_{\text{triv}})/L(s, \chi_{\text{triv}})$  has a simple pole at  $s = 2$ . Using the fact that

$$L(s, \chi_{\text{triv}}) = \zeta(s) \prod_{p|m'} (1 - 1/p^s)$$

and the expansion  $\zeta(s) = 1/(s-1) + h(s)$  where  $h(s)$  is holomorphic, we see that

$$\sum_{\substack{k>0 \\ k \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \varphi(k)/k^s$$

has a simple pole at  $s = 2$  with residue

$$(D.2) \quad \frac{\varphi(d)}{\varphi(m') d^2} \frac{\prod_{p|m'} (1 - 1/p)}{\prod_{p|m'} (1 - 1/p^2)} \cdot \zeta(2) \prod_{\substack{p|d \\ p \nmid m'}} \frac{1}{1 - 1/p^2} = \frac{6}{\pi^2 d^2} \frac{\varphi(d)}{\varphi(m')} \prod_{p|m'} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) \prod_{p|dm'} \frac{1}{1 - 1/p^2}.$$

We now appeal to the following well-known theorem (make the change of variable  $s' = s/2$ ):

**Theorem D.2.** *Let  $f(s) = \sum_{k>0} a_k/k^s$  converge absolutely for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 2$  with analytic continuation to  $\operatorname{Re}(s) = 2$  except for a simple pole at  $s = 2$  with residue  $R$ . Then*

$$\sum_{k \leq x} \frac{a_k}{k^2} = R \log x + O(1).$$

Theorem D.1 now follows on setting  $a = m$  in (D.2) and using the well-known identity  $[\Gamma(1) : \Gamma_0(m)] = m \prod_{p|m} (1 + 1/p)$ .  $\blacksquare$

**Lemma D.3.** *Let  $a$  and  $k$  be integers with  $k > 0$ , and let  $p$  be a prime that divides  $k$ . Assume  $p \nmid a$ , and let  $\zeta$  be a primitive  $k$ th root of unity in  $\mathbf{C}$ . Define*

$$c_k(m) = \sum_{\substack{h \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times \\ h \equiv a \pmod{p}}} \zeta^{hm}.$$

Then

$$c_k(m) = \begin{cases} (\mu(k/(m, k))\varphi(k))/((p-1)\varphi(k/(m, k))) & \text{if } \operatorname{ord}_p(k) \leq \operatorname{ord}_p(m), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$



*Proof.* Since  $\zeta^{k/p}$  is a primitive  $p$ th root of unity, we may write

$$\begin{aligned} c_k(m) &= \frac{1}{p} \sum_{\zeta_0^p=1} \sum_{h \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times} \zeta_0^{-(a-h)} \zeta^{mh} \\ &= \frac{1}{p} \sum_{j \in \mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}} \zeta^{-kja/p} \sum_{h \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times} \zeta^{(m+jk/p)h}. \end{aligned}$$

We can remove the  $a$  in the first exponent since  $p \nmid a$ . Combining this with the standard evaluation

$$\sum_{h \in (\mathbf{Z}/k\mathbf{Z})^\times} \zeta^{\ell h} = \mu(k/(k, \ell)) \cdot \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(k, \ell))}$$

for  $\ell \in \mathbf{Z}$ , we get

$$c_k(m) = \frac{1}{p} \sum_{j \in \mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}} \zeta^{-kj/p} \mu\left(\frac{k}{(k, m + jk/p)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(k, m + jk/p))}.$$

Evidently,

$$(k, m + jk/p) = \begin{cases} (m, k/p) & \text{if } j \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p} \\ (m, k) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Therefore,

$$c_k(m) = \frac{1}{p} \left( -\mu\left(\frac{k}{(m, k/p)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(m, k/p))} + \mu\left(\frac{k}{(m, k)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(m, k))} \right).$$

If  $\text{ord}_p(m) < \text{ord}_p(k)$  then  $(m, k) = (m, k/p)$  so  $c_k(m) = 0$ . On the other hand, if  $\text{ord}_p(m) \geq \text{ord}_p(k)$  then  $(m, k/p) = (m, k)/p$  and  $\text{ord}_p(k/(m, k)) = 0$ , so we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_k(m) &= \frac{1}{p} \left( -\mu\left(\frac{pk}{(m, k)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(pk/(m, k))} + \mu\left(\frac{k}{(m, k)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(m, k))} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{p} \mu\left(\frac{k}{(m, k)}\right) \left( \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(p)\varphi(k/(m, k))} + \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(m, k))} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\varphi(p)} \mu\left(\frac{k}{(m, k)}\right) \frac{\varphi(k)}{\varphi(k/(m, k))} \end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof. ■

#### REFERENCES

- [1] B.C. Berndt, H.H. Chan, and L.C. Zhang, Explicit evaluations of the Rogers–Ramanujan continued fraction. *J. reine angew. Math.* **480** (1996), 141-159.
- [2] B.C. Berndt, H.H. Chan, S-S Huang, S-Y Kang, J. Sohn, S.H. Son, The Rogers–Ramanujan continued fraction, *J. Computational and Applied Mathematics* **105** (1999), 9–24.
- [3] S. Bosch, W. Lütkebohmert, M. Raynaud, *Néron models*, Springer-Verlag, 1990.
- [4] Cohen, P. On the coefficients of the transformation polynomials for the elliptic modular function. *Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc.* (1984), **95**, 389-402
- [5] P. Deligne and M. Rapoport, “Les schémas de modules des courbes elliptiques” in *Modular functions of one variable II*, Lecture notes in mathematics **349**, Springer-Verlag (1973), pp. 143–316.
- [6] Elkies, N.D. “The Klein quartic in number theory” in *The eightfold way*, MSRI publications, (1999), **35**, pp. 51–101.
- [7] R. Fricke and F. Klein, *Vorlesungen über die Theorie der elliptischen Modulfunktionen*, Vol. II, B.G. Teubner, 1890-2.
- [8] A. Gee and M. Honsbeek, Singular values of the Rogers–Ramanujan continued fraction, *Ramanujan Journal*, to appear.
- [9] Kang, S. Ramanujan’s formulas for the explicit evaluation of the Rogers–Ramanujan continued fraction and theta-functions. *Acta Arith.* XC.1 (1999), 49-67.
- [10] N. Katz and B. Mazur, *Arithmetic moduli of elliptic curves*, Annals of math studies **108**, Princeton University Press, 1985.
- [11] Klein, F. *Lectures on the icosahedron*, Dover Publications, Inc. (1956).

- [12] H. Kraft and C. Procesi, *Classical invariant theory: a primer*, [www.math.unibas.ch/~kraft/Papers/KP-Primer.pdf](http://www.math.unibas.ch/~kraft/Papers/KP-Primer.pdf), 1996.
- [13] Kubert, D.S., Lang, S. *Modular Units*. Springer-Verlag, New York 1981.
- [14] Lang, S. *Elliptic Functions.*, 2nd ed. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1987.
- [15] Lang, S. *Algebra*, 3rd ed. Addison-Wesley, New York, 1993.
- [16] H. Matsumura, *Commutative ring theory*, Cambridge University Press, 1986.
- [17] McKean, H., Moll, V. *Elliptic curves*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge 1997.
- [18] Serre, J.P. *A Course in Arithmetic*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1990.
- [19] Shimura, G. *Introduction to the Arithmetic Theory of Automorphic Functions*. Princeton University Press, Princeton NJ. 1994.
- [20] Silverman, J.H. *Advanced Topics in the Arithmetic of Elliptic Curves*. Springer-Verlag, New York 1994.
- [21] Watson, G.N. Theorems Stated by Ramanujan (VII): theorems on continued fractions, *J. London Math. Soc.* **4** (1929), 39-48.
- [22] Whittaker, E.T., Watson, G.N. *A Course of Modern Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge 1996.
- [23] Yi, J. Modular Equations for the Rogers–Ramanujan Continued Fraction and the Dedekind Eta-Function. *Ramanujan J.* **5** (2001), 377-384.
- [24] Yi, J. Evaluations of the Rogers–Ramanujan continued fraction  $R(q)$  by modular equations. *Acta Arith.* **XCVII.2** (2001), 103-127.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, ANN ARBOR, MI 48109, USA  
*E-mail address:* `bcais@umich.edu`

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, ANN ARBOR, MI 48109, USA  
*E-mail address:* `bdconrad@umich.edu`